

英语介词分类例解

PREPOSITIONS

程本蕃 编著



北京航空學院出版社

英语介词分类例解

程本蕃 编著

北京航空學院出版社

内 容 简 介

介词在整个英语词汇中所占数量极小，但它们的用途极广，同时它们的用法又相当复杂，而在词典中常用介词的释义少则十条左右，多则三、四十条，还不包括介词成语和介词与其它词类的搭配。为此，本文对英语介词的分类提出了更新的科学方法——简化介词在用途上的分类以便易于学习；明确介词的各种用法之间以及与成语和搭配之间的联系，从而能够更系统地学习；对各种用法的介词词组的译意都以公式表达，以便能更正确地理解和使用介词；各例组后都附有汉语译文。本书不仅适合于初学英语者之用，并可供英语教学和研究的进一步探讨。

英语介词分类例解

程本蕃 编著

责任编辑 白文林

北京航空学院出版社出版

新华书店北京发行所发行 各地新华书店经售

北京航空学院印刷厂印装

787×1092 1/32 印张：12.5 字数：280 千字

1987年3月第一版 1987年3月第一次印刷 印数：23000 册

统一书号：17432·037 定价：2.30 元

前 言

本书所创议的英语介词分类法，以及作者编写本书的动机和意图将在第一章的1.1和1.7两节中予以叙述，这里再就上述三点（方法，动机和意图）作些补充作为前言以告读者。

一）本书中对各介词不同用法都以介词词组列出公式，式中的两个英语大写字母代表介词宾语，它们又分别表示介词的用途和用法（详见1.7节）。也就是说，公式为这种分类法的具体表现，这是列出公式的一个目的。

二）公式右方的汉译是为了使译文，特别是介词词组的译文尽量规范化。这一目的联系到六十年代初期作者曾设想英汉翻译机器的动机，现在似乎可以从介词词组的汉译迈进一步。

三）对各介词的不同用法都配有各种句型和各种功能的例句，数量随介词应用的广泛程度而定。各例组都附有汉译，以供读者参考。希望读者在看译文之前先译一遍，或者在看了之后再译一次，这不仅可以更理解介词的用法，而且还可以对介词分类提出改进的意见。顺便提一下，根据作者早年口译和笔译的经验体会，作者倾向于逐字对译；这对于政经、理工、和医农等科技作品更应如此；即使对于文学作品也先要能够逐字对译得好，才能进一步加工美化。所谓逐字对译并不是死译，必须遵守两种语言的逻辑，例如：“He is at home”。通常译为“他在家”，极少译为“他是在家”；而“He is not at home”。总是译为“他不在家”，没有人会说：“他是不在家”。或“他不是在家”。

四) 公式都配有编号, 例如 (YC6), 其中前面两个英语大写字母仍分别代表用途和用法, 后面的数字则为序号。同一用法的同一介词在不同用途中一般具有相同的释义, 则序号也相同; 反过来说, 不同用法的, 但具有近似意义的同一介词也尽可能给以同一序号。公式的这样编号, 是为了易于对照参考, 也是为了在索引中易于查找。

五) 本文所提介词分类法既属创议, 那么不完善以及甚至错误之处在所难免, 抛砖引玉以便群策群力继续向前改进。这是作者编写本书的主要意图。更有进者, 除了能对我国英语学习者更正确地理解和使用介词外, 这一新的介词分类法实际上也是对各大英语词典提出一种改革挑战, 作者不免有班门弄斧之嫌; 不过, 凡事都可以改革, 都需要改革, 乘我国目前改革之风, 把这介词的改革吹向世界。

目 录

前 言

第一章 概论.....	(1)
1.1 本书的目的.....	(1)
1.2 英语介词.....	(2)
1.3 介词词组.....	(5)
1.4 介词词组在句子中的功能.....	(7)
1.5 介词后置.....	(10)
1.6 介词的用途和用法.....	(13)
1.7 英语介词的分类.....	(17)

部分一 介词用于空间

第二章 地点XA.....	(19)
2.1 所在的处所.....	(19)
2.2 接触的线面.....	(22)
2.3 所在的区域.....	(25)
2.4 At, on和in在这一用法(XA)中的区别.....	(27)
第三章 位置XB.....	(31)
3.1 上下位置.....	(31)
3.2 前后位置.....	(41)
3.3 内外位置.....	(43)
3.4 居中和两侧.....	(47)
3.5 中间和四周.....	(50)
第四章 方向XC.....	(55)
4.1 目标和指向.....	(55)
4.2 目的地和逆向.....	(58)
4.3 出发点.....	(61)
4.4 到达点.....	(66)
4.5 相对定向.....	(71)

4.6 参考方向.....	(74)
第五章 路径区域 XD	(78)
5.1 经过	(78)
5.2 经由	(80)
5.3 定向轨迹.....	(82)
5.4 距离和区域.....	(89)
5.5 介词用于空间的小结.....	(91)

部分二 介词用于时间

第六章 简单时间 YA	(93)
6.1 时刻和年龄.....	(94)
6.2 日期和时机.....	(96)
6.3 年月和单元.....	(100)
第七章 相对时间 YB.....	(104)
7.1 年龄的大小.....	(104)
7.2 时间的先后.....	(105)
7.3 时间的迟早.....	(109)
7.4 时间之间和之内.....	(112)
7.5 大约时间.....	(114)
第八章 起迄时间 YC_i.....	(116)
8.1 就时论时.....	(116)
8.2 顺时逆流.....	(118)
8.3 开始时间.....	(121)
8.4 终止时间.....	(124)
8.5 从开始到终止.....	(128)
第九章 经历时间 YD.....	(131)
9.1 时限	(131)
9.2 段落时间.....	(132)
9.3 期间	(137)
9.4 介词用于时间的小结.....	(142)

部分三 介词用于人世间

第十章 状态处境ZA	(143)
10.1 即时景象	(144)
10.2 面临场合	(146)
10.3 内涵情况	(149)
第十一章 优选对比ZB	(161)
11.1 高低上下	(161)
11.2 先后次序	(166)
11.3 中间内外	(169)
11.4 过与不及	(175)
11.5 相比近似	(177)
第十二章 来龙去脉 ZC(上)	(182)
12.1 目标和方向	(182)
12.2 目的	(185)
12.3 对象	(187)
12.4 希望和追求	(197)
12.5 交换代替	(200)
第十三章 来龙去脉 ZC(中)	(207)
13.1 来源	(207)
13.2 判别的原型	(211)
13.3 脱离的原状	(212)
13.4 被阻的原来活动	(216)
13.5 原因	(221)
第十四章 来龙去脉 ZC(下)	(235)
14.1 对待人	(235)
14.2 及事及物—结果	(239)
14.3 符合和比拟于	(244)
14.4 附属于	(246)
14.5 从事于	(250)
14.6 关于	(253)

第十五章 途径ZD(上)	(260)
15.1 主动因素	(260)
15.2 方法	(263)
15.3 手段和媒介	(269)
15.4 经历和接受	(275)
15.5 控制和被控制	(279)
第十六章 途径ZD(下)	(283)
16.1 伴随	(283)
16.2 工具和方式	(288)
16.3 带有和充填	(291)
16.4 否定	(293)
16.5 此外	(299)
16.6 除去	(300)
16.7 尽管如此	(303)
16.8 要(不)是如此	(306)
16.9 介词用于人世间的小结	(307)

部分四 介词词组的特殊功能

第十七章 of-词组作为名词修饰语	(310)
17.1 概论	(310)
17.2 特征的描写	(311)
17.3 所属的主体	(313)
17.4 人事物的说明	(315)
17.5 部分与总体	(316)
17.6 行动的修饰	(318)
17.7 形象化的对象	(321)
17.8 计量和种类	(322)
第十八章 介词动词	(325)
18.1 目的和定义	(325)
18.2 有关介词动词的几点说明	(330)
18.3 介词动词的实例	(330)

第十九章 介词词组作为形容词的补充语	(352)
19.1 介词 about	(352)
19.2 介词 at	(353)
19.3 介词 by	(355)
19.4 介词 for	(355)
19.5 介词 from	(358)
19.6 介词 in	(359)
19.7 介词 of	(362)
19.8 介词 (up)on	(365)
19.9 介词 to	(366)
19.10 介词 with	(369)
第二十章 句子的连接语和修饰语	(374)
20.1 句子连接语	(374)
20.2 句子修饰语.....	(378)
20.3 谚语和寓言.....	(381)
索引	(387)

第一章 概论

1.1 本书的目的

介词在英语词类中属于小品词或辅助词的一种，它们的数量不过百来个。英语介词的数量虽少，但它们的用处却相当广，这使初学英语的人对它们的理解和选用遇到了些困难，为了解决这一问题，很久以来有不少中外学者对它们进行了大量的研究并编写了不少的书籍。特别是在最近几年，我大陆各省和台湾以及香港出版的这类书籍为数很多，其中：有的是把英语介词分门别类说明它们的用途和意义；有的则收集介词与其它词类的搭配；有的则两者兼备；它们的共同点是内容丰富详尽。但是，对初学者来说学习上的困难仍然没有完全解决。调查了其中的原因主要有两个方面：（1）客观上，有人认为介词在用途上的分类似乎过细而彼此间又缺少联系，以致不易掌握；（2）主观上，不少人认为英语有英语的习惯用法，中文则有中文的，要改变习惯也非易事。

对任何事物的分类是为了更好地认识该事物；对一事物的认识越深，则对它的分类也就可以越细；对英语介词也是如此。但对初学英语的人来说，要是一开始即对介词的分类过细，恐不易接受；如果分类再有些不太明确，则更易引起混乱。何况，介词关联着生活上无数错综复杂的事物而不同于专门领域中的学科，似乎不大可能并且也没有必要过细地把它们分门别类。

我们不能否认各种语言都或多或少有各自的习惯用法，但是我们也应当承认各种语言的共同习惯不仅是存在的也有待发掘的。所以我们既不应夸大语言上习惯的不同方面，更不能把它强调成为学习上困难的关键。何况我们学习一门外语本来就是学习它的习惯用法，同时求同存异，反复比较，以至能理解和掌握它。

因此，本文的目的是：（1）尽量说明英语介词的习惯用法，包括一般介词词组、介词成语、介词与其它词类的搭配、以及最重要的它们之间的联系，由此（2）把介词作适度的分类。

1.2 英语介词

现在我们把常见的英语介词列于表1-1。从形式上看，英语介词有简单介词，复合介词和双重组合介词。

1) 简单介词：就英语介词演变到目前阶段来说，简单介词均为整体单词。表中尽量详细列入；但不包括极少见而偏用的介词，所以表中并不是全部英语介词。美语中通用 onto，而英语中仍常作为复合介词 on to。简单介词的极大多数也可以用作其它词类，特别是副词。而副词与介词又常易于混淆，所以要根据语法识别分清。在表1-1简单介词表（1）中，除名词右上角有“*”记号的外，其余都可用作副词。

2) 复合介词是由其它词类，主要是副词，后接介词而组成，即（副词/连词/形容词/等等+介词），表中列入若干最常见的。

3) 双重组合介词是（介词₍₁₎+名词+介词₍₂₎）的组合。这一形式的介词为数不少并且属于发展型的。由于它们

具有双重性，比起简单介词来，它们的意义更明确。复合介词也具有这一特征。

表 1-1

1) 简单介词

aboard	about	above
across	after	against
along	alongside	amid*
among*	around	as
at*	before	behind
below	beneath	beside*
besides	between	beyond
but	by	concerning*
considering	despite*	down
during*	except*	for
from*	in	inside
into*	like	near
notwithstanding	of*	off
on	onto*	opposite
outside	over	past
pending*	per*	regarding*
respecting*	round	since
through	throughout	till*
to	toward(s)*	under
underneath	until*(=till)	up
upon*(=on)	via*	with*
within	without	

2) 复合介词

according to	as for	as to
away from	because of	but for
due to	instead of	next to
out of	owing to	up to

3) 双重组合介词

by means of	by way of
by(in) virtue of	for fear of
in addition to	in case of
in front of	in lieu of
in place of	in regard of
in respect of	in spite of
in view of	on account of
on(in) behalf of	on top of
with regard to	with respect to

从上面所列简单介词中我们可以看到其中有不少是由动词的现在分词直接或间接演变而来，这种演变还在继续。这里要指出是英语介词或多或少具有动词的效力。这在汉语中也是如此，并且有过之无不及。汉语中，除虚字和实字外。本来没有明确的词类之分（可以说是一个很大的优点）；目前列为介词的“在，过，朝”在下列句子中都可以看作是动词：“他在家，He is at home。”“他的才智过人，His ability is above others。”“她朝她孩子们微笑，She smiles on her children。”“不要以貌取人，Do not judge a person by his looks。”这不仅说明了两种语言的相似之处，汉语更为简单。

1.3 介词词组

1.1 节中提到英语介词是一种小品词，是用来联系一句句子中两个方面事物之间在空间、时间、以及人世万象等等上的关系。因之，（1）介词在句子中不能没有它所联系的事物而单独存在；（2）介词在句子中的位置，一般说来，是介于两个方面事物之间，一前一后，其中尤以后面那个更为重要而通常总是紧跟在介词之后（所以介词又译作前置词）。

表达介词后面所联系的事物可以是名词、代名词、名词词组、以及名词代用语——关系词词组和现在分词词组，但不包括that-词组和不定式词组。我们把这些通常紧跟在介词后面的名词等叫做介词宾语，而把介词与介词宾语的这种组合叫做介词词组。

分析一个介词的意义和用途主要是取决于它的宾语，亦即要从介词词组着手。由于介词关联到两个方面的事物，它的意义和用途有时还须从整个句子来考虑。此外，介词词组有时与前后句子和讲话时的环境也有关系，这将在下节中说明。例组1-1是以十个最常用的介词并且按它们各自的主要意义和用途连同相应的宾语所分别构成的简单例句，各句中的介词词组都以黑体字表明。

例组 1-1

1. This book is about **English prepositios.**
2. The train will arrive at ten sharp.
3. You can learn English **by listening and speaking.**

4. We are fighting for peace.
5. These fruits from our garden are not bad.
6. I like to sit quietly in the dark.
7. That task needs a man of courage.
8. He often lectures on Everest(Jumulangma).
9. We will give it to whoever comes first.
10. Please fill the form with a pen.

下面是十句汉译文，在各句后面括号作了扼要的说明。

1. 这本书是**关于英语介词**的。(about联系书与它的内容，它的一个主要意义是“关于”。)
2. 那火车将在**十点正**到达。(at联系火车到达与时间，它的主要意义是“在”)
3. 你可以**通过听和讲**学习英语。(by联系学习英语与听和讲，从而说明了学习的手段，by的一个重要意义是“通过”。)
4. 我们正在**为和平**而斗争。(for联系斗争与和平，它的主要用途是“目的”。)
5. 这些**从我们果园**里采来的水果都不坏。(from联系水果与果园，从而指出了水果的产地，它的主要意义，也许是唯一的意义是“从”。)
6. 我喜欢静坐**在黑暗之中**。(in联系静坐与黑暗，指出了事情发生的环境，它的主要意义是“在中……”。)
7. 这一任务需要一个**有勇气**的人。(of联系人与勇气，描写了人的性格，它的主要译意是“的”)
8. 他经常演讲**论述珠穆朗玛峰**。(on联系演讲与珠峰；由于没有人会经常在这样的高峰上演讲，所以这里的on作论述解，而珠峰是演讲的题目而不是具体的地方。)

9. 我们要把它送给**第一个到达的任何人**。(to联系把它送与人，而人是接受者。即语法上所谓间接宾语，to在这里作“给”解。)

10. 请**用墨水笔**填表。(with联系填表与笔，表明了行动所用的工具，with的一个重要意义在这里是“用”。)

从上面十个例句和说明中可以初步看到：

1) 除了例句5和2的两个介词(from和at)分别联系具体的空间和时间外，其余八个则各联系着人世间各种事物。这牵涉到介词的分类问题，留到积累了更多的例子后再说。

2) 例句8中的介词词组，孤立地从表面上看，是指空间而实则不是。我们常会遇到相反的情况，即介词宾语表面上不是空间或时间而实则是。这与介词的用途和分类也有关系，但介词词组在句子中的虚虚实实首先要分清。

3) 例句8也可以汉译成为“他经常**在珠…峰的各种问题上**作演讲。”这是遵循原意而译文比原文添加了“问题”一词；但对照“他**在讲台(空间)上**讲课”，则on的意义得到沟通为“在…上”。(当然还可以有别的译法，如“他经常演讲有关(或关于)珠峰的问题(或情况)”，“他经常对珠峰的各种情况(或问题)作演讲”，等等。)这属于汉译问题，既要把全句译对而不过多添加单词，又要把一个词的意义在不同用途上统一沟通，全面局部都要注意。

1.4 介词词组在句子中的功能

考查一下介词词组在句子中的功能对理解介词的意义和用途是有帮助的。首先，我们把例组1-2中例句a1, a2和a3作对比：它们在构造上是相同的；在特定场合下，它们的语意也是相同的；所不同的是所用的修饰语，(a1)为介词词组，(a2)为介词型副词，(a3)为副词；由此可以说介词

词组是一种副词性词组，在句中用作副词性修饰语或状语 (adverbial or adjunct)。

例组 1-2

- a1. A man is waiting outside the gate.
- a2. A man is waiting outside.
- a3. A man is waiting there.
- b1. The man outside the gate is waiting.
- b2. The man outside (or there) is waiting.
- c1. Outside the gate is a man waiting.
- c2. Outside is a man waiting.

其次，有些副词可以用来作为后置名词修饰语，介词词组也常可以这样，如例句b1和b2。

此外，作为名词修饰语的形容词有时可以作为名词代用语，介词词组也是如此，如例句c1和c2。

综上所述，介词词组在句子中的各种功能列如例组1-3。

例组 1-3

一、副词性修饰语或状语 (参看例组1-2, 例句a1)

1. A bright future lies before us.

二、名词修饰语 (noun modifier) (参看例组1-2, 例句b1)

2. Children under ten years old are not admitted.

三、表语即主语补语 (predicative)

3. The girl is with her mother.

4. It is now toward noon.

四、宾语补语 (complement)

5. He put his chair next to mine.

6. Don't treat me as a child.

五、主语 (subject) (参看例组1-2, 例句c1)

7. Between five and six will suit me.

六、介词宾语 (preposition object)

8. He came out from behind the curtain.

七、动词补充语 (verb complement)

9. He is looking at the painting.

10. They asked for help.

八、形容词补充语 (adjective complement)

11. They are agreeable to the change.

12. I am not certain about that.

九、句子修饰语 (sentence modifier--disjunct)

13. In general, hard study pays in the end.

14. Of course, you know what that mean.

十、句子连接语 (sentence connective--conjunct)

15. By the way, have you seen him recently?

16. On the other hand, we can do that tomorrow.

在上面十种介词词组的功能中我们可以指出:

1) 最常见的是副词性修饰语或状语(一)和名词修饰词(二), 其次是表语(三)和补语(四), 主语(五)比较少见, 而介词宾语(六)只限于少数介词。

2) 动词补充语(七)和形容词补充语(八)也常见。在这些情况中, 各介词与它前接的动词或形容词的关系较为密切并常有一定搭配, 它的意义常随所搭配的词有所改变

(另有专章讨论)。

3) 句子修饰语(九)和句子连接语(十)也不少见,口语中更多,它们分别表达讲话人对所讲内容的看法和对前后文的延续。这种介词词组大多为成语或习惯用语(汉语也是如此)。

练习 1-1

1. 指出例组1-1中各介词词组在各自句子中的功能。

2. 把例组1-2和1-3中各例句译成汉语,并指出各介词所联系的事物。

1.5 介词后置

在1.3节中我们提过介词的位置都通常是直接在它的宾语之前,也就是说通常是直接前置。但在一些情况中介词必须后置并远离它的宾语;而在另一些情况中介词常后置,但也可以前置,亦即两者俱可。兹分别说明各种情况并在例组1-4中列出介词后置的例子。

A. 英语中“是何问话句的问话词who, which等须放在句首,如这问话词是介词宾语时,介词可以连同一起移动而仍为前置,而习惯上常把介词后置,如例句1a, b和2a, b。

B. 句中有关系词词组并作为名词修饰语时,介词前置或后置均可,如例句3a, b和4a, b。

C. 句中的关系词组作为名词代用语时,介词必须后置,如例句5, 6, 7和8。

D. 不定式词组作为名词修饰语或形容词补充语时,由于介词须与它前面动词紧密结合,介词必须后置,如例句9, 10, 11和12。

E. 在被动语态中, 由于原来介词的宾语已成为主语, 介词必须后置, 如例句13和14。

F. 在被动语态中, 由于原来介词的宾语已成为主语, 介词必须后置, 如例句13和14。

例组 1-4

A. 是何问句 (wh-questions)

1a. **Who(m)** did you give the present to?

(后置, who或whom均可)

b. **To whom** did you give the present?

(前置, 必须用whom)

2a. **Which hotel** is he staying at? (后置)

b. **At which hotel** is he staying? (前置)

B. 关系词词组作为名词修饰语 (wh-clauses as modifiers)

3a. The house **which** I was telling you about is empty. (后置)

b. The house **about which** I was telling you is empty.

4a. This is the house (**which**) we live in.

(后置, which可省略)

b. This is the house **in which** we live. (前置)

C. 关系词词组作为名词代用语 (wh-clauses as noun-substitutes)

5. I don't know **which hotel** he is staying at.

6. I don't know **where** that man comes from.

7. **What** I was aware of is that we made a

mistake.

8. The weather is just what one could wish for.

D. 不定式词组 (infinitive phrases)

9. He has a large family to provide for.

10. It is nothing to speak of.

11. Is that man easy to deal with?

12. This question is worth to look into.

E. 被动语态 (passive voice)

13. In China, old people are well cared for.

14. His help can be counted upon.

译文 1-4

A. 1. 你把那礼物送给哪一个了?

2. 他住在哪一家旅馆?

B. 3. 那所我讲给你听过的房屋是空的。

4. 这就是我们住在其中的房屋。

C. 5. 我不知道他住在哪一家旅馆。

6. 我不知道那个人是从哪里来的。

7. 我所觉察到的(什么)就是我们犯了个错误。

8. 那天气恰好是那种我们所能指望到的。

D. 9. 他要为一个大家庭提供赡养。

10. 对这是没有什么可说的。

11. 同那个人容易打交道吗?

12. 这一个问题是值得(进行)调查的。

E. 13. 在中国,(对)老年人都受到(予以)良好照顾。

14. 他的帮助是可以指望(得到)的。

从上面译文中可以看出, 由于汉语不象英语那样有那些问话

词和关系词的构造，汉语介词总是前置的；在不定式词组 (D) 和被动语态 (E) 的例句中，由于介词与前接动词紧密结合或已成为介词动词词组，因而介词的意义已隐含在动词之中而合为一体，如例句12, 13和14中汉译介词可以不要而仍符合原意，例句9, 10和11中汉译介词仍前置。作为练习，读者不妨对这一例组译文欠妥之处予以重译以便改进。

1.6 介词的用途和用法

在前几节中我们略述了些有关介词的语法。为了提出介词分类的设想，这一节中举出更多的例句。先看例组1-5。

例组 1-5

1. For thousands of years astronomers have been looking at the moon, studying its appearance and its motion through the sky.
2. By the time the Apollo II astronauts began preparing for their lunar voyage, scientists have gathered enormous amounts of data about the moon.
3. Sometimes when the sun shines through millions of raindrops hanging in the air, we see all the colours of the sun's light in a beautiful arch across the sky.
4. Hydrogen and oxygen are present in water in the proportion of 1 to 8 by weight.
5. we get our drinking water from rain that has fallen into lakes and rivers, or has soaked down into springs under the earth.

6. An ideal projectile is a particle which moves **in** a vacuum **with** constant horizontal velocity **under** the action of a constant vertical force.
7. The vertex of a triangle is the corner **opposite** the line that is selected as the base line.
8. Ships usually go to sea for one main purpose, but many other kinds of work may be carried out to take advantage of being there.
9. **With** television, the scene in the studio is reproduced, **without** second's delay, **on** the viewing screen in the television receiver.
10. **After** supper, **all over** the world people are sitting down in their rooms and watching the news **on** the television or are listening to it **on** the radio.

例组1-5中各例句都是在阅读中随手选录的，它们是一些有关日常生活和自然现象的浅易句子；各句中的单词数多的不过30而少的只有15左右，而各句中的介词数少的占全句单词数的1/6，多的达到1/3。据统计，在一本或一段读物中有介词的句子约占相应句子总数的2/3，这说明了介词的用途很广而具有重要性。此外，把各句汉译后我们会发现同一介词在不同的场合具有不同的意义。

为了说明一个介词具有多种多样的意义，在例组1-6中我们以介词in（共37个）构成的例句（共20句）来说明，它们中用于空间和时间的介词词组十分明显而意义也相当明确；用于非空间和非时间的则名目繁杂，按目前一般分类并尽量加以归纳压缩后仍可有下述各项目。兹一并分述于下，关于：

一) 空间的有10个: 例句1的“在村子里”, 例句3的“在住宅里”; 例句4的“在前面”和“在后面”; 例句6的“在医院中”和“在军队中”; 例句7的“在其中”(代替照片); 例句17的“在园子里”; 例句18的“在近邻中”; 例句19的“在起居室中”。

二) 时间的有7个: 例句6的“年逾古稀”; 例句9的“年龄上”(虚指); 例句3的“五、六个月内”; 例句17的“在一清早”和“在下午”; 例句19的“在夜晚”和“及时”(in time为一成语)。

三) 形式和方式的有8个: 例句2的“在式样上”和“在大小上”; 例句7的“穿着军装”和“穿着白衣”; 例句11的“分成…部分”和“以英语写成”; 例句16的“在口味方面”和“在营养方面”。

四) 环境和状态有6个: 例句8的“在退休中”; 例句9的“精神上”和“在领域中”; 例句15的“井井有条”; 例句20的“在平静中”。

五) 活动过程有4个: 例句10的“忙于写作”; 例句14的“忙于家务”(这两句都属于形容词加补充语); 例句20的“在同意…中”和“在希望中”(它们都属于双重组合介词)。

六) 例句18和20的介词词组分别为句子连接语“此外”和句子修饰语“总之”, 并且都是成语, 这与汉译一样。

例组 1-6

1. In a quiet village lives an old couple.
2. Their house is rather old-fashioned in design, but has a garden quite big in size.

3. In their house there are six rooms.
4. The study is in the front, the kitchen in the rear.
5. They are both in their seventies.
6. She had been working in a hospital and he in the army.
7. They still keep an old photograph in which he is a young man in uniform and she a pretty girl in white.
8. They are now living in retirements.
9. They are old in years but young in minds.
10. The husband keeps himself busy in writing a book.
11. It is a book in ten parts, and written in English.
12. He is an authority in his field.
13. He intends to complete it in five or six months.
14. She is always occupied in house keeping.
15. She keeps everything in good order.
16. The foods she made are always excellent both in taste and in nutrition.
17. They work in the garden together in the early morning and take a walk in the afternoon every day, even in the rain.
18. In addition, they often visit peasant-famililes in their neighbourhood.
19. In the evening, they are usually sitting in the

living room and watching the television to learn the news in time.

20. In short, they live in peace, in memory of the sweet past, and in hope of the better future.

练习 1-2

1. 汉译例组1-5和1-6中各例句，并分别指出各介词词组在句子中的功能。

1.7 英语介词的分类

对英语介词的适度分类，我们的设想有下列各点：

一) 介词联系事物与空间和时间的两种关系通常是明确而易于识别的。至于介词联系事物与其它关系，我们可以从上节以介词in为例的例组1-6中看到，我们在那里即使作了些归纳，名目仍是繁多而分不胜分，何况它们还是人世间万象的一部分。我们认为与其分而不清不如不分。也就是说，除了空间和时间两种关系外，我们把其它关系合并并把它称为人世间。这样，介词的横向分类为三种，即空间（记为X），时间（记为Y），和人世间（记为Z）。

二) 我们知道，介词用于空间时也有几种用法并且可以概括为：（1）事物所在或发生的地方（记为A）；（2）事物的相对位置（记为B）；（3）事物何去何从的方向（记为C）；（4）事物所经过的路径和复盖的距离和区域（记为D）。这是介词的纵向分类。

三) 介词在空间关系上的纵向分类连同介词本身基本上完全可以移用于时间和人世间。这样，我们也就可以把各介词的三种用途（横向分类）通过四类用法（纵向分类）予以

沟通了。下面是介词分类方法的总表，表中的用途 A、B、C和D各给予一个总的名称，可以作为参考以便于记忆，而所谓静态和动态并不以整个句子的意义，而是按介词本身来分。例如：“在公园里坐着”和“在公园里散步”都是“在公园里”，所以定它为静态；“有条路穿过公园”和“他跑步穿过公园”都是“穿过”，定为动态；“飞机在公园上空盘旋”和“公园在我们飞机下面”是相对的，定为相对静态；“向公园走去”和“离公园已不远”都属于动向”。这四类用法具体到其它两种用途上也类似。

表 1-2

用 金 用 法	X空间	Y时间	Z人世间
A静态	地 点	简单时间	状 态 处 境
B相对静态	位 置	相对时间	优 选 对 比
C动向	方 向	起迄时间	来 龙 去 脉
D动态	路 径	时 期	途 径

部分一 介词用于空间

从这一章开始我们将按照表1-2及所示各介词主要用法，从空间关系开始逐章逐节说明各介词的用法和它的特点，以作为我们把各介词移用于其它关系的基础，以求达到简化我们对各介词的理解和应用。

第二章 地 点

所谓地点是指事物存在或发生的空间。在这一用法中我们可以有反（或否定）意，但关系是不可逆的。例如“那人在房间里”，我们可以说“那人不在房间里”或“那人已离开那房间”；但我们不能说“那房间在人的外边”。这里有以下几种情况。

2.1 所在的处所

介词at即用于这一情况。在这一用法中，所谓处所是指事物存在或发生的地点具有下列特征之一。这地点：

- 1) 相对周围事物来说可以认为是一点；
- 2) 作为整体看待而可以泛指为一个点；
- 3) 看作为一个机构而不是具体的建筑而虚指为一处

所，也意味着是一个点，不过意义也随之有所转变：

4) 虽系实物，但只用来表明事物所在处所。

总之，at 在这一用法中所联系的地点都可以看作是个“点”，它的介词词组可以概括为

at XA → 在XA (处) (XA1)

括号中的(处)可以视情况而决定取舍。

例组 2-1

1. The two lines intersect at point A.
2. The two hands are at twelve when it is 12 o'clock.
3. He was waiting at the bus stop when I saw him last.
4. The train is standing at platform 8.
5. He lives at 2062 Xian street.
6. Nobody answers at the other end of the telephone.
7. His name is at the top of the list.
8. There is a school at the edge of the village.
9. Notes are sometimes printed at the bottom of the page.
10. we stayed at the entrance and waited.
11. Our ship touched at Shanghai last week.
12. We stopped to stay over night at New York.
13. When will he be at home?
14. He was at his desk when I came.
15. Children are at school now.

16. we were at the ball game when you called.
17. The door will be soon given at the hinges.
18. This equipment has been designed to work at high altitude.
19. The old man hold the paper at arm's length.
20. What the teacher says often goes in at one ear and out at the other.

译文 2-1

1. 那两条线在A点交叉。
2. 十二点正时那两根针都指在12（点处）。
3. 我上一次看到他时他正在汽车站等车。
4. 那列车正停靠在8号站台。
5. 他住在西安街2062号。
6. 在电话的那一头没有人来接。
7. 他的姓名是在那名单上的顶端。
8. 在这村子的边沿处有个学校。
9. 注解有时被印在一页的底端。
10. 我们停留在入口处并且等着。
11. 我们的船上星期曾在上海停靠。
12. 我们曾停留在纽约过夜。
13. 他什么时候在家？
14. 我到来时他已在伏案工作。
15. 孩子们现在都在上学。
16. 你打电话来时我们都去看球赛了。
17. 那扇门很快会在合叶处损坏。

18. 这一设备是为了在高空处工作而予以设计的。
19. 他老年人（在）伸直手臂（处）拿着文件。
20. 老师说的经常（在）一只耳朵进（在）另一只耳朵出。

在例组2-1中，（一）例句1是个几何点；例句2可以想象为一几何点；例句3、4和5中相对街道和车站来说车站，站台，某号房屋都可以看成是个点；例句6~10都是这种或那种端点；（二）例句11和12中上海和纽约都作为整体看而在地图上都是一个点；（三）例句13~16中的地方都是虚指的，如‘家’并不一定指房屋，因之它们的意义也都转变了；（四）例如17~20中各介词宾语的含意都是“处”。

2.2 接触的线面

用英语介词on来说明事物所在或发生的地点时，必须同时具备下面两个条件：

一）这里的地点是一条直线而不再是个点，或者是一个面，但不是有界限的面积；

二）事物须附着在或毗连于这条线或这个面上，亦即它与这线或面有一定的接触或受到这线或面的支持。事物附着或毗连于这线或面上，但不一定高于这线或面，而在它们之上亦即

on XA → 在XA上 (XA2)

例组 2-2

1. That point falls on the circumference of the circle.

2. That player trampled on the boundary line.
3. Please walk on the sidewalk.
4. I saw many new places on my last trip.
5. The gyro-compass automatically keeps the ship on a predetermined course.
6. The super-market is on Xian street.
7. Shanghai is situated on our east coast.
8. The door swings noiselessly on its hinges.
9. There are a few scratches on the surface of the table.
10. Lay the machine parts on the floor.
11. A notice was pasted on the wall.
12. A lamp is hung on the ceiling.
13. He lives on the continent now.
14. A small boat is floating on the water.
15. The moonlight is only the sunlight shining on the moon.
16. He is hanging a picture on a peg.
17. The boy touched him on the sleeve.
18. He carries a coat on his arm.
19. I saw that movie on television last week.
20. Have you any money on you?

译文 2-2

1. 那一个点落在这圆的圆周线上。
2. 那一个球员踩在边界线上了。
3. 请走在人行道上。

4. 我在我上次的旅途上游览了许多地方。
5. 陀螺罗盘自动使船只保持在预定的航线上。
6. 那超级市场是在西安街（上）。
7. 上海（是）位于我们的东海岸之滨。
8. 那门毫无声响地在它的各铰链上旋转。
9. 在那桌子的表面上有几条刮伤痕迹。
10. 把那机器的各部件放在地板上。
11. 有一个通告贴在那墙上。
12. 那盏灯（是）吊在天花板上。
13. 他现在住在大陆上。
14. 一只小船正飘浮在水上。
15. 那月光只不过是照耀在月亮上的太阳光。
16. 他正在一个钉子上挂一张照片。
17. 那男孩在袖子上摸了他一下。
18. 他在他的手臂上挟着一件外套。
19. 我上星期在电视机上看过那电影。
20. 你身上带了钱吗？

例组2-2中：（一）例句1~5都表明事物与线的接触，其中有几何线，而人行道，旅途，航线等都可以看成是线；

（二）例句6~8都是指事物与各种线毗连，其中例句8显然是指各铰链的连线（比较例组2.1中例句17）；（三）例句4~15说明各事物都附着于各种面上，其中例句15太阳是照射在月亮表面上，不能把月亮看成是个球体或者一个点；比较例句10、11和12，事物既可以在面的上面受到支承，也可以附着于侧面和下面，而都可以说附着在……上；（四）例句16~20都是些特例，钉子本可以看做是一个点，在袖子和手臂上也许只接触到一个点，但都强调了附着在……上；

电视机当然是指它的屏幕是个面，但这一用法也可以看作是观看节目的手段而属于ZD；例句20的 on you（或别的代名词）是英语的习惯用法，意指在你口袋里，皮包里等，这正好有相应的汉译“你身上”（在字可以有而一般不用），这说明了两种语言的一个相似之处。

2.3 所在的区域

介词in所联系事物所在或发生的地点具有一定的界限或范围的这样一个特点，即面积如区域，领土，场地等，和体积如容器，房屋，天空等，事物即存在或发生在这种界限或范围之中（或里）。in的介词词组可以概括为：

inXA → 在XA里（或中） (XA3)

例组 2-3

1. The line AB lies in the second quadrant.
2. In those dry areas water is indeed precious.
3. We often work in the field outside.
4. Don't play football in the street.
5. This is the only factory in the village.
6. The ship is sailing in Chinese Water.
7. They live in Asia now. (see examples 2-2, sentence 13)
8. The pressure in this sphere is very low.
9. Nothing is hard in this world.
10. All day the stars are in the sky.
11. I get tired of riding in the car all day.

12. There are many rooms in this house.
13. There is a lot of water in your body.
14. He tried to put the key in the lock.
15. He found the word in the dictionary.
16. There was a fault in the wiring.
17. They are officers in the army.
18. A dog is barking somewhere in the distance.
19. The sun rises in the east.
20. The aircraft was flying in a western direction.

译文 2-3

1. 线段AB是处在第二象限中。
2. 在那些干燥区域里水是真正宝贵的。
3. 我们经常在外面田野里干活。
4. 不要在街道中踢足球。
5. 这是（在）这村子里的唯一工厂。
6. 那船只正在中国的水域中航行。
7. 他们目前住在亚洲。
8. 在那球体里的压力是非常低的。
9. 在这世界上没有什么事是艰难的。（世上无难事。）
10. 星星是整日整夜在天空中的。
11. 我整日坐在车子里感到厌倦了。
12. 在这一屋子里有许多房间，
13. 在你的身体里有很多水分。
14. 他曾设法把那钥匙放进锁眼里。
15. 他在词典里找到了那单词。

16. 在那线路里有了点毛病。
17. 他们都是陆军里的军官。
18. 有只狗正在远方某处狂叫着。
19. 太阳在东方升起。
20. 那飞机正在西向的航程中飞行。

在例组 2-3 中：（一）例句 1~7 的地点都属于有界限的面积；比较例句 7 与例组 2-2 中的例句 13，亚洲是有界限的而大陆（或某洲）是含糊而没有明确范围的；（二）例句 8~16 的地点都或大或小有一定的体积；（三）例句 17 的陆军也可以看作是个机构，属于 ZA，是跨两种方法的（参看 ZA）；（四）例句 18、19 和 20 中的用法可以有争议的，它们既可以说明事物发生的地点，也可以指事物发生的方向。按例句 18 原文，如果我们强调“远方”则是指方向，要是把重点放在“某处”则是指地方。例句 19 中的“东方”可以理解为“天空中的东部区域”，那就是地点了，试比较

1. Japan is to the east of China. 日本是在中国向东（或东方）。

2. Shanghai is in the east of China. 上海是在中国的东部。

to 是用于方向，而 in 用于地点；何况太阳在东方升起而向西运行（相对）。例句 20 可以汉译为：“那飞机正在西向飞行”，那是方向，但是我们把它理解为“西向航程中”，那是一个空间区域。总之，in 的这一用法值得我们进一步探讨。作为暂时保留：

in XC → 向 XC (XC3)

2.4 At, on, 和 in 在这一用法(XA)中的区别

从以上三节中这三个介词——at, on, 和 in——在用于

地点时的用法和例句，我们可以总结如下：

首先，在《现代英语语法》（参考书1）中提出的以量纲来区分这三个介词的用法确是一个有效的方法。其次，要判断一个地方的量纲还取决于它在句中的含意，它还是虚指或泛指，是与它有接触，还是它具有一定的界限。兹把它们的用法，特点，汉译等列表于下，附例组2-4。

表 2-1

介词词组	量 纲	特 点	汉 译
at XA	点	虚指或泛指	在XA
on XA	线，面	附着或毗连	在XA上
in XA	面积；体积	有一定界限	在XA里(中)

例组 2-4

- 1a. There are ships at sea with automatic helmsmen.
- b. That was the most tragic battle ever fought on the sea.
- c. Great waves are surging in the crushing sea.
- 2a. There is a lamp post at every street corner.
- b. There is a department store on the corner.
- c. His desk is in the corner of the room.
- 3a. He was at his desk when I came.
- b. There is a telephone on his desk.
- c. The important papers are kept in his desk.

练习 2-1

- 1) 汉译例组2-4各例句。这例组是以大海，转角，和

书桌作为三个地点，各以at, on, 和in分别构成三个句子，说明它们的用法。

2) 在下列各句中选填at, on, 或in并逐句汉译。

1. Many kinds of animals live...water.
2. We met him ... the airport.
3. There are factories ... both sides of the road.
4. He lives ... the end of the road.
5. There is little air ... the ball.
6. The town is ... the bank of the river.
7. A plane circled the airport and landed...the run-way.
8. Please calculate the reactios ... the support.
9. The water ... the sea has salt in it.
10. Which building is the office ... ?
11. His house is ... West Street.
12. Accidents usually happen ... the intersection of streets.
13. Stick a stamp ... the envelope.
14. Hankow is a city ... the Yantze.
15. The war was fought ... land and sea.
16. We saw the show ... the concert hall.
17. How long will he be ... town?
18. There is a label ... the bottle.
19. She put her foot ... her shoe.
20. He spoke to everyone ... the meeting.
21. We live ... the earth.
22. She's ... the diving board ready to dive.

23. He dipped his pen ... the ink.
24. We were ... the beach yesterday.
25. The fish was ... the hook.
26. The boy has got a little idea ... his head.
27. It looks better ... a distance.
28. The beam is rested ... five supports.
29. Water is ... all growing things.
30. She put a pair of dark glasses ... him.
31. We stopped ... the store to buy some salt.

第三章 位 置

位置 (position or relative position) 是指事物所在或发生的空间是相对的并且常是可逆的。例如：“你在我的前面”和“我在你的后面”都是说的你和我相对位置而实则是一回事；向后转了以后你和我的位置就倒过（即可逆）来了。这与表明地点的介词不同，譬如“你在房间里”，我们总不能说“房间在你外”。

用于位置的介词常是成对的，包括简单介词、复合介词和双重组合介词。除了上面所说的前后位置外，还有上下位置，里外位置，中间和四周位置，以及居中和旁边位置。分述于后。

3.1 上下位置

表明上下位置的介词最多，但各具各自的一定的条件：

1) Above XB是指事物存在或发生的位置是在XB的上方；但不一定在XB的顶头上方；在顶头上方时也不一定与XB接触。也就是说，above XB用法的条件比较宽，只要事物的位置高于XB即可。条件宽虽然意味着用途广，它可以代替其它在XB之上的介词，包括 on 在内，只要符合它们的用法条件（见下）；但是，另一方面，为了使句子的意思更明确和更形象化，代用时要斟酌。

above XB → 在XB之上，高于XB (XB1)

例组 3-1

1. The satellites are soaring far above the earth atmosphere.
2. The sun is still there above the gray raindrops even it is raining.
3. The mountain towered above the plain.
4. Above the ground you can see plants and animals, waters and mountains.
5. Pressure above the wing is reduced.

译文 3-1

1. 那些卫星正在远离地球大气层的上空飞翔。
2. 即使下着雨太阳还是在那些灰蒙蒙雨点的上方。
3. 那座山高高耸立在平原之上。
4. 在地面之上你可以看到植物和动物，以及山和水。
5. (在)机翼表面上的压力是降低了。

2) Below是above的逆义词。也就是说below XB是指事物所在或发生的位置是在XB的下方,但不一定是正下方;在正下方时也不一定与XB接触。象above那样,它可以有条件地代替其它在XB之下的介词。

below XB——>在XB之下, 低于XB (XB2)

例组 3-2

1. The Dead Sea is below the sea level.
2. When the sun sets it goes below the horizon.
3. Below the village the valley opens into the broad flat meadow.

4. The river is just below our car.
5. A crack was located below the surface of the metal part.

译文 3-2

1. 死海是低于海平面的。
2. 太阳下山时它落在地平线下面。
3. 在这村子的下方那山谷展开成为宽广的平坦草地。
4. 那河流正好在我们车子的下面。
5. 一条在那金属部件表面下的裂缝被测定了位置。

下面例组 3-3 举了更多的 above XB 和 below XB 的例子。目的是要指出它们的可逆性，但也注意到句子的顺口与否，如例句 7 和 8。

例组 3-3

1. Shall I write my name above or below the line.
2. One-ninth of the iceberg is above the water and eight-ninth is below it.
3. We are flying above (or below) the cloud.
4. The cloud is moving below (or above) our plane.
5. His family lives in the flat above (or below) this one.
6. He had a bruise just below (under) (or above) his left eye.
7. The water came above our knees.
8. His overcoat reaches just below the knees.
9. There is a waterfall above (or below) the bridge.
10. The bus stop is a few yards below (or above) the

bank.

译文 3-3

1. 要把我的姓名写在这条线的上边还是下边?
2. 那冰山的九分之一是在水面之上而九分之八则在它的下面。
3. 我们正在那云层上面(下面)飞行着。
4. 那云彩正在我们飞机的下方(上方)飘动。
5. 他全家住在这层上面(下面)的公寓里。
9. 他有个伤疤正好在他左眼的下侧(上侧)。
7. 水已升到我们的膝盖之上。
8. 他的外套刚刚够到他的膝盖下面。
9. 在这座桥的上游(下游)有条瀑布。
10. 那公共汽车站是在这银行下首(上首)几步路。

3) Beneath可以说是个 below的同义词, beneath XB也是指事物的存在或发生是在XB之下, 但事物低于XB而不一定被XB所遮蔽覆盖, 也可以是被遮蔽而不一定与XB接触, 还可以被覆盖而又有接触, 亦即

beneath XB——→在XB之下, 低于XB (XB3)
事实上, beneath 用于空间的这一用法已属陈旧, 现在只见于文学作品中, 但常用于人世间ZB。只要条件相符, 它用于空间时常用别的介词代替, 如例组3-4中所示。

例组 3-4

1. The step beneath (below) this one is not very safe.
2. We shall have a rest beneath (under) the tree.

3. He concealed it beneath (underneath) his garment.
4. The hen gathered her brood beneath (under) her wing.
5. Are there living things beneath (below) the covering clouds of Venus?

译文 3-4

1. (在) 这一级下面的台阶不十分安全。
2. 我们将在那株树的下面休息一下。
3. 他把它藏在他衣服的下面。
4. 那母鸡把她的一窝小鸡聚集在她的翅膀下面。
5. (在) 覆盖着金星的云层下面有没有生物?

4) Over XB是指事物所在或发生的位置是在XB的上方并且是顶头上方, 但不一定与XB有接触: 事物也可以既覆盖而又接触XB。

over XB——→在XB的上方 (XB4)

更多的情况是事物仅仅高临于XB之上而没有接触, 这意味着事物具有俯临于XB之上的含意, 这是over的一个重要特点。

例组 3-5

1. A cloud hangs over the summit.
2. The scenic flight plane flies over the West Lake.
3. The flag is still flying over the sunken ship.
4. The telephone wires over the street are ugly.
5. Why don't you hang that picture over the fire-

place?

6. There is a leak in the roof over my desk.
7. Look at the clouds over our head!
8. The air over the flame is very warm.
9. They put a cover over the machine.
10. She wore a cloak over her uniform.

译文 3-5

1. 有朵云彩飘浮在那山峰顶上。
2. 那游览飞行机在西湖的上空飞行。
3. 那旗帜仍在那沉船的上方飘扬着。
4. (在) 街道上空的电话线是非常难看的。
5. 你为什么不把那照片挂在壁炉的上方。
6. 在我书桌上方的屋顶里有个漏洞。
7. 看看(在) 我们顶头上空的那片云!
8. (在) 火焰上面的空气是非常热的。
9. 他们把一个套子罩在那机器上面。
10. 她在她的制服上面披了一件斗篷。

例组3-5各例句中的over XB都符合它特性, 即事物都直接在XB之上, 其中例句1~8表明事物高临在XB上面而没有接触, 例句9和10则覆盖在XB之上而有接触, 要注意的是: 例句1和2都可以用作XD, 即事物在XD上飘过或飞过, 但由于例句1的飘浮和例句2的游览观光, 我们可以把它们分别理解为停留在和盘旋在XB的上空而并没有过XD; 例句6和7都强调事物是在XB的顶头上方, 它们分别提出了“快下雨了要否出去”和“漏水滴在书桌上”这样的问题, 否则讲话的口气就不一样了。

5) Under XB是指事物的位置直接在XB的下面或下方,事物可以被XB覆盖而又有接触,也可以是被遮蔽而没有接触,还可以是被XB一般地掩蔽。不论怎样,事物under XB不仅直接低于XB,并且具有仰受XB的荫庇的这一特点。

under XB → 在XB的下方 (YB5)

例组 3-6

1. The earthquake center was under the sea.
2. There is a tunnel under the water.
3. The chicks ran for shelter under the mother hen's wing.
4. The patient has to keep the thermometer under the tongue.
5. The pioneers slept under the stars in their journey.
6. The river under the bridge is three men deep.
7. Why don't you sit under the light so you can see better?
8. A sample is put under a microscope.
9. The village nestles under the hill.
10. The soldiers are standing under the castle wall.

译文 3-6

1. 那地震中心是在海下面。

2. 在那河下面有条隧道。
3. 那些小鸡为了躲避跑到了母鸡翅膀的下面。
4. 病人必须把体温表放在舌头的下面。
5. 开荒的人在他们的旅途中露宿在星星之下。
6. (在) 那桥下面的河流有三人深。
7. 你为什么不在灯光下面而可以看得更清楚些?
8. 一个试样被放在显微镜的下面。
9. 那村子坐落在那山脚下。
10. 士兵们正站在那城堡的墙脚下。

6) On top of是一个双重组合介词。On top of XB与on XA相比, XA不一定指上面; 现在加上top of则明确指出事物存在或发生是在XB的上面并与它接触, 即

on top of XB → 在XB的上面 (XB6)

例组 3-7

1. They mounted a small rocket on top of a V-2 rocket.
2. We placed a solar battery on top of a telephone pole and connected it to a telephone system.
3. A piece of glass is laid on top of the magnet.
4. The carburetor, which sets on top of the engine, is used to mix gasoline and the air.
5. The luggage rack is on top of the bus.

译文 3-7

1. 他们在V-2火箭的上面安装了一个小火箭。

2. 我们把一个太阳能电池安装在电话杆的顶上并把它连接到电话线路。
3. 一块玻璃被搁在那磁铁的上面。
4. 安在发动机顶部上面的汽化器是用来混合汽油和空气的。
5. 行李架是在公共汽车的顶部上面。

7) Underneath XB 是指事物直接在 XB 的下面并且被它覆盖着, 亦即事物隐藏在XB的下面, 即

Underneath XB → 在XB的下面 (XB7)

例组 3-8

1. There is a sunken ship underneath the memorial.
2. We found a lot of bugs underneath the rock when we turned it over.
3. It sounds as if there is a rat underneath the floor.
4. Some animals have their homes underneath (under) the ground.
5. Lift up those books and bring me the paper that's underneath (under) them.

译文 3-8

1. 在那纪念碑的下面有一条沉没的船。
2. 当我们翻转那石块时我们在它下面发现了大量的虫子。
3. 听起来好象 (在) 地板下面有只老鼠。

4. 有些动物在地面下安家落户。

5. 拿开那些书并把（在）它们下面的文件递给我。

从例组3-2中各例句可以看出， underneath XB 明显地含有隐藏或躲藏在XB下面的意义；这个含意不强时，它与 under 可以通用，如例句 4 和 5。

练习 3-1

填入上下位置的介词，注明可以替用的词并汉译各句：

1. There is a large cellar ... the kitchen.
2. Steel pylons hold the wires ... the ground.
3. A mirror is hung ... the fire place.
4. The boy pulled away the brush and found a small fawn ... the foliage.
5. All the pipes were laid ... the ground.
7. You'll find some paper ... the books.
8. The boys cooked their meal...the campfire.
9. There is a rock four feet ... the surface of the water.
10. He pointed up to the room ... him.
11. The part which is ... your mouth is your chin.
12. They found the ivory buried ... the fish pond.
13. Don't stand ... a coconut palm that's loaded with nuts.
14. The crowd sat ... an awning.
15. I tried to reach it, but it was ... my head.

16. A boat ... the bridge is sailing fast.
17. There is a waterfall ... the bridge.
18. The ship sank ... the waves.
19. The tools are in the large box ... the shelf.
20. The medicine is kept ... the shelf.
21. The little chicks ran for shelter ... the mother-
hen's wings.
22. She tied her veil ... her chin.
23. She has been working ... a hot stove all
day.
24. The river ... the bridge is in flood.
25. Look ... you and you'll see it on a ledge ... the
door.
26. They buried the guns ... the stone marker.
27. The boy is hiding ... the deck.
28. Our apartment is ... theirs.
29. I wish I were a bird and could fly ... the tree-
tops.
30. Sod worms work ... the soil.

3.2 前后位置

表达前后位置的介词有 in front of 和 behind. Before 和 after 现在已不用于空间的这一用法。

- 1) In front of XB → 在XB的前面 (XB11)
- 2) Behind XB → 在XB的后面。 (XB12)

例组 3-9

1. When the moon goes in front of the sun, we have an eclipse of the sun.
2. There is a smooth lawn in front of the house.
3. Who is the girl standing in front of the black-board?
4. The children are sitting in front of the television set.
5. Such prefixes may also be put in front of English words.
6. He laid the book on the table in front of the boy.
7. His eyes are staring blindly in front of him.
8. The sun was behind the clouds.
9. A large lake will be formed behind the dam.
10. The bush was a good hiding-place, so we dash behind it.
11. There is someone behind the door.
12. His eyes behind the dark glasses are staring blindly.
13. Jet planes will leave noise behind them.
14. Behind her are her two students.
15. The road stretches in front of and behind the car.

译文 3-9

1. 当月球运行到太阳的前面时，我们遇到一次日食。
2. 在那屋子的前面有一块平整的草地。
3. 站在那黑板前面的姑娘是谁？
4. 孩子们都正坐在电视机的前面。
5. 这种词头也都可以放在英语单词的前面。
6. 他把那本书放在那孩子的前面那张桌子上。
7. 他的眼睛茫然凝视着他的前方。
8. 太阳已在云层的后面。
9. 一个大湖将在那水坝的后面形成。
10. 那灌木丛是个良好躲藏的地方，因而我们猛冲到它的后面。
11. 有人在那门的后面
12. 他那对在深色眼镜后面的眼睛盲然凝视着。
13. 喷气式飞机会在它们的后面留下喧闹声。
14. 在她的后面是她的两个学生。
15. 那条路在车子的前面和后面伸展着。

练习 3-2

In front of和behind可以说是表示前后位置的一对逆意介词。现在请把例组 3-9 中的介词可以换成相应逆意词的各例句改变一下并写出正确的英语和译文。

3.3 内外位置

表达内外位置的介词有inside和outside这一对逆意词，以及within。

1) inside XB——→在XB的里面 (XB13)

2) outside XB——→在XB的外面 (XB14)

其中XB可以是界线, 面积, 或体积。

例组 3-10

1. The ball fell inside the boundary line.
2. The bicycle is inside the boor.
3. The sound came from inside the wall of the house.
4. There is not much air inside an electric lamp.
5. Chemical reactions take place inside the battery that result in a flow of electricity.
6. A charge of gas is compressed inside the chamber.
7. Powerful forces inside the earth break the rocks.
8. Plants make their own food inside themselves.
9. The ball went outside the goal.
10. Outside the corridor were half a dozen of steps.
11. We are not allowed to go outside the ground.
12. He was listening outside the room.
13. He is waiting outside the station.
14. Outside the galaxy there is empty space.
15. The pressure inside the container is much lower than that outside the container.

译文 3-10

1. 那球落在边界线的里边。
2. 那自行车（是）在大门的里边。
3. 那声音是从这房屋的墙里面来的。
4. 在电灯泡的里面没有多少空气。
5. 化学反应是在蓄电池的里面发生的从而产生了电流。
6. 一次进汽在汽缸里面受到压缩。
7. （在）地球内部的巨大力量断裂了岩层。
8. 植物在它们自己的内部生产它们自己的食物。
9. 那球飞出了球门的外边。
10. 在那走廊的外边有六、七级台阶。
11. 我们是不许走到场地的外边的。
12. 他正在那房间的外面留神听着。
13. 他正在车站的外面等待。
14. 在银河系的外面是个空洞的空间。
15. （在）那容器里面的压力比它外面的要低得多。

3) Within XB——→在XB之内。 (XB15)

例组 3-11

1. Many prisoners died within the walls of the concentration camp.
2. There is no human habitation within 10 miles of this place.
3. He lives within a stone's throw of the office.
4. Within a watch are many wheels.

5. More than 50,000 people live within this district.

译文 3-11

1. 许许多多俘虏死在那集中营的围墙之内。
2. 在这一地方的十英里的周围内杳无人烟。
3. 他住在办公室一投石的距离之内。
4. 在一只表的内部有许许多多的轮子。
5. 有五万多人住在这地区之内。

练习 3-3

在下列各句中择优填入前后和内外位置的介词：in, front of, behind, inside, outside, within, 并汉译。

1. The photographers ran ... the goal post.
2. What is ... the bag?
3. There is a table ... the fire place.
4. I shall go ... the house when I am smoking.
5. By x-rays we can see what is ... the body.
6. Wait ... the door until you are asked to come in.
7. Our car broke down again ... a mile.
8. There is no hospital ... three miles of the village.
9. Put the umbrella ... the door.
10. I'll be ... the building early tomorrow morning.
11. Don't walk ... this dangerous zone.
12. The orbit of Mar is ... the orbit of the earth.

13. There is a cart ... the bus.
14. He has never been ... a church.
15. The water which is stored ... a dam flows out with a great force when it is allowed to do so.
16. When clouds float ... the sun, they make shadows.
17. There is a thin wire ... an electric lamp.
18. The infantry came ... the cavalry.
19. Smoking is prohibited ... the school compound.
20. A big ship moored ... the harbor.

3.4 居中和两侧

表达这些位置的英语介词有between, 和beside以及by。这里两侧, 与可上可下, 可前可后和可内可外相似, 是指或左或右的一侧; 但不同于上下, 前后和内外的可逆, 立场不同, 是左还是右的看法也不同, 它们本身是不可逆的。此外, 居中与两侧也不是完全可逆的。

1) Beside XB通常是指在一侧的旁边, 具有两件事物互相依旁的较明确的含义, 即

beside XB → 在XB的旁边。 (XB16)

例组 3-12

1. There is a path beside the river.
2. We would like to live beside the sea.
3. The conductor is standing beside the steps.
4. Hang your coat on the hook beside mine.

5. Put that picture beside other so we can compare them.

译文 3-12

1. 在那河流的旁边有一条小路。
2. 我们喜欢生活在海滨。
3. 那列车员正站在台阶的旁边。
4. 把你的外套挂在我外套旁边的那个钩子上。
5. 把那张照片放在另一张的旁边以便我们可以把它们比较一下。

2) By用于位置时与beside的意义类似,有时可以通用;但一则由于by有更重要的用处,二则由于by可以指在一点之旁而比较含糊,与beside通用时要注意。

by XB—→在XB之旁 (XB17)

例组 3-13

1. We had a very happy day by the sea.
2. It is pleasant to sit by the fire.
3. It is useful to have a dictionary by you when you are reading.
4. I have not got his letter by me at the moment.
5. I'll put my chair by (or beside) yours.

译文 3-13

1. 我们在海滨度过了十分愉快的一天。
2. 坐在火炉旁是舒适的。
3. 你阅读时有本词典在你手边是有用的。

4. 我此刻没有把他的信带在身边。

5. 我想把我的椅子放在你的椅子旁边。

3) Between XB 是指事物的存在或发生是在其它两个事物之间，亦即居它们之中：

between XB_1 and XB_2 → 在 XB_1 和 XB_2 之间 (XB18)

例组 3-14

1. The Mediterranean Sea is between Europe and Africa.
2. This train runs between Beijing and Shanghai.
3. The river flows between its banks.
4. Those fast planes can operate only between airports with long runways.
5. Anhui lies between Zhejiang, Jiangsu, Jiangxi, Henan and Hubei.

译文 3-14

1. 地中海是在欧非两洲之间。
2. 那列火车往来于北京与上海之间。
3. 这条河在它的两岸之间奔流。
4. 那些高速飞机只能在具有较长跑道的航空站之间飞行。
5. 安徽省是位于浙江，江苏，江西，河南以及湖北各省之间。

在例组3-14中，例句1~4的事物是位于两个事物之间是清楚的。例句5中有五个省与安徽接壤，似乎是不再在两者之间了；但我们可以这样理解，从一个省要经过安徽到另一个省，安徽就在这两个省之间了；一般说来，这种用法是

指若干两者之间的组合。

3.5 中间和四周

表达这两种位置的介词有amid和among以及about, around和round。我们把事物在群体的中间与群体在事物的四周看成是相对而可逆的位置。

1) Amid XB是指事物存在或发生是被包围在XB之中, 但与XB有区别而易于辨认, 即

amid XB → 在XB之中 (XB19)

例组 3-15

1. The house stands amid the trees.
2. The village peeped out amid the woodland.
3. A book was found amid the wreckage of the car.
4. Some exploded particles fell amid the crowd.
5. Amid the growing shade of dusk stand sturdy pines.

译文 3-15

1. 那房屋坐落在树林之中。
2. 那村子隐约露出在那块林地之中。
3. 一本书是在那车子残骸碎片之中发现的。
4. 一些爆炸碎片散落在人群之中。
5. 在那黄昏越来越暗的阳影之中耸立着些挺拔的松树。

2) Among XB是指事物混杂在XB的中间而成为其中之一, 即

among XB——→在XB的中间

(XB20)

例组 3-10

1. Somewhere, among all that crowd, was a lost child.
2. She found a place to sit among the girls.
3. Have you seen my homework among your papers?
4. Among the books on the table was a small one bound in leather.
5. I searched among all the trash and finally found the lost papers.

译文 3-16

1. 在那人群的中间什么地方有个迷路的儿童。
2. 她找到了一个可以坐在女孩子中间的位置。
3. 你有没有在你卷子的中间看到我的课下作业?
4. 在桌上的书堆中间有本皮面装订的小书。
5. 我在所有废纸中间寻找了一遍而终于找到了那丢失的文件。

3) About XB——→在XB的周围,附近; (ZB21)

4) Around XB——→在XB的四周,附近; (XB22)

5) Round XB——→在XB的周围,附近。 (XC23)

这三个介词在这一用法中的意义相同而可以通用, 如有区别也只是地区语言习惯上的, 英国以用 about 比较正规, 美国则都用 around。

例组 3-17

1. He made a fence about the garden.
2. She has a gold chain about her neck.
3. He gathered his family about him.
4. There is a crowd of people about the lost child.
5. I haven't any money about me.
6. They formed a circle around the big tree.
7. There is a field of force around either pole of the magnet.
8. We cannot see the air, but there is air all around us.
9. The place has a high fence around it.
10. You need things to keep you grow, just as everything around you does.
11. They are sitting round the table.
12. He has a scarf round his neck.
13. A current flows through the wire round the rod.
14. The captain stationed his fieders round the pitcher.
15. Cotton is the soft white hair round the seed of the plant.

译文 3-17

1. 他在那花园的周围筑了一道篱笆。
2. 她在她脖子的周围挂着一根金项链。
3. 他把他的家属召集在他的周围。

4. 在那迷路儿童的周围有一群人。
5. 我家徒四壁。
6. 他们在那大树的四周围成一个圈子。
7. 在任一个磁极的周围有一个力场。
8. 我们无法看见空气，但在我们的四周尽是空气。
9. 那地方有高高的篱笆在它的四周。
10. 你需要东西保持你成长，正象你周围的每件东西一样。
11. 他们正在那桌子周围坐着。
12. 他在他脖子周围裹着一条围巾。
13. 电流通过绕在棒子周围的电线。
14. 那队长把他的外场球员在投手的四周设好岗位。
15. 棉花是作物种子周围的白色软绒毛。

练习 3-4

选填中间，旁边，周围位置的介词连同地点介词 at, on 和 in (必要时) 并汉译下列各句。

1. She sat ... the two children in church to separate them.
2. She feels shy ... strangers.
3. Put the chair there ... the wall.
4. The place has a high fence ... it.
5. He sat quietly and look ... her.
6. Put the bookcase over there ... the wall.
7. A badly injured man was located ... the ruins.
8. He is known ... here as a hero.
9. He found it ... the side of the road.
10. She found it ... her things.

11. Try to walk around and mingle ... the guests.
12. He has a sore ... his toes.
13. This machine shouldn't be ... the stove because it might get overheated.
14. A new power plant is found ... the factories.
15. She has a gold chain ... her neck.
16. After dinner, everyone sat ...the campfire.
17. I saw several new faces ... the students.
18. The boys were waiting ... the house this morning.
19. She usually stands there silently ... her mother.
20. The little church is almost hidden ... the two large buildings.
21. They live ... a small farm ... the river.
22. I left the package ... the living room ... the table and the big chair.
23. His mother told him to wait for her ... the side walk ... the library.
24. I'll be waiting ... the corner ... the light post.
25. They were sitting ... the two benches one ... the other.
26. They were sitting ... each other ... the bench.
27. Our house was a haven of quiet ... the noise of the street outside.
28. The boy is hiding ... the bushes.
29. The factory has to be built ... the river.
30. ... her ... the seat she had placed her handbag.

第四章 方 向

方向只是一个总称，按照常用具有方向性的介词，它包括：(1)目标；(2)目的地；(3)出发点；(4)到达点；和(5)各种方向。

4.1 目标和指向

目标是事物以它为指向而朝着它前进或活动的地点。目标和指向实际上都表达方向。

1) At在这一用法中通常限于注视，射击，等等所及的处所，

at XC→朝（或向或对）着XC (XC1)

例组 4-1

1. He merely glanced at the picture.
2. The little girl stared at the toys on the table.
3. The hunter fired at a fox.
4. He threw a book at me.
5. Inquire at the desk for information.

译文 4-1

1. 他朝那照片仅仅看了一眼。
2. 那小姑娘朝着桌子上的玩具盯视着

3. 那猎人朝着那狐狸开了枪。
4. 他把一本书朝着我扔了过来。
5. 去向那问讯处打听消息。

2) On在这用法中更接近于事物活动的方向:

on XC → 向XC (XC2)

例组 4-2

1. The house looks out on the sea.
2. The door opens on the street.
3. We will make an attack on the enemy's capital tonight.
4. He drew a knife on the robber.
5. The mother smiles on her children.

译文 4-2

1. 那屋子望出去面向大海。
2. 那扇门开向街道。
3. 今天夜间我们要向敌人的首都进攻。
4. 他向那强盗拔出了刀子。
5. 那母亲向她的孩子们微笑着。

3) Toward(s)在这一用法中的意义就是“朝”或“向” (towards和toward只是分别为英和美两国人民的习惯用法, 实际上是一样的。) 它在这里表达客观方向, 并且只有“接近”而没有“到达”的含义 (参阅下面的to):

toward(s)XC → 朝 (或向) XC (XC8)

例组 4-3

1. The bus follows the road toward Beijing.
2. The window opens towards the east.
3. The train sped towards the tunnel.
4. This attraction tends to pull the electron in toward the proton.
5. He rushed towards the entrance.
6. Any object that send light waves towards our eyes is visible.
7. He nodded towards the next room.
8. The children rushed towards their mother.
9. He saw a light and began to walk towards it.
10. There is a car racing towards us.

译文 4-3

1. 那公共汽车是顺着朝北京去的道路行驶。
2. 那窗户是朝东开的。
3. 那列车朝着隧道飞驶而去。
4. 这一吸引力试图把电子朝着质子拉进去。
5. 他朝着入口处冲了过去。
6. 朝着我们的眼睛传递光波的任何物体是可以看到的物体。
7. 他朝着隔壁房间点了点头。
8. 孩子们朝着他们的母亲冲了过去。
9. 他看到了灯光并开始朝着它走去。

10. 有辆车子朝着我们疾驰而来。

4.2 目的地和逆向

目的地是人事物打算要或规定要达到的地方，并且包含着有意识的活动方向。另一方面，人事物也常会在违背本身意志的情况下活动，这就是常话所说的处于逆境。介词for和against就是表达这些情况的一对逆意词，用途很广而相当重要，这里用于方向只是其中的一种，是它们用法的重要开端。

1) For是用于目的地的一个介词：

for XC→往（或去）XC (XC6)

例组 4-4

1. That ship is sailing for Africa.
2. Which is the train for Beijing?
3. They left for the sea-side.
4. The kids are running for home.
5. All passengers change here for Hangzhou.

译文 4-4

1. 那条船正要开往非洲。
2. 哪一列火车是开往北京的？
3. 他们已出发去海滨了。
4. 孩子们正在往家中跑去。
5. 去杭州的所有旅客都在这里换车。

2) Against在这里是用于人事物的逆向活动或方向性位置（也可以归入XB，待进一步探索）；

against XC → { 逆向XC
(背)靠XC (XC7)

例组 4-5

1. Ballons have no engine to drive them against the wind.
2. If that tree falls against the house, it will break the window.
3. A few flies dash themselves against the wall.
4. He must have hit his head against the top.
5. Th ship struck against a reef.
6. Place the book shelf against the wall.
7. The ladder was placed against the tree.
8. The seats have no back against which to lean.
9. I thought I was going to fall so I steadied myself against the desk.
10. White sails are sharply outlined against the dark horizon.

译文 4-5

1. 气球是没有发动机来驱使它们逆风前进。
2. 要是那株树冲着屋子倒下来，它会打碎玻璃窗的。
3. 有几个苍蝇碰壁。
4. 他一定把自己的头撞着了车顶。
5. 那条船触着了一个暗礁。

6. 把那书架靠墙放着。
7. 那梯子是靠着的。
8. 那些座位都没有椅背可以靠着。
9. 我以为我要摔倒了，因而我靠在那书桌上以稳住自己。
10. 点点白帆衬着黑暗的地平线显得轮廓格外鲜明。

练习 4-1

择优填入方向性介词—at, on, toward(s), for 和 against, 并汉译下列各句。

1. I stole a glance...her.
2. The workers marched...the capital.
3. He set off...America this morning.
4. The sunflower turns...the sun.
5. They were walking...the sea.
6. Columbus and his men set sail...India in 1492.
7. The rain was beating...the window.
8. She started...a tour round the world.
9. The boy aimed...the bird.
10. It's getting late, we'd better head...home.
11. The angry dog ran...me.
12. The room faces...the south.
13. The bicycle is leaning...the fence,
14. I hurried...my office.
15. He crossed the road...the bank,

4.3 出发点

出发点意味着事物是从那里出发，或者是从那里离开，也就是事物的来源地。用于出发点的英语介词有：from, away from, off, out of和of。

1) FromXC→从XC来 (XC11)

例组 4-6

1. The television pictures from the moon were so clear and sharp.
2. Men bring coal and oil up from underground.
3. A pregnant lady rescued him from the Suzhou River.
4. The road diverged sharply from the highway.
5. There was a smell of meat coming from the kitchen.
6. He learnt English from books.
7. These fruits are from our own garden.
8. He came from England last week.
9. He comes from Iceland.
10. How many kilometers are we from Beijing?

译文 4-6

1. 从月球发来的电视都是这样清楚明晰的。
2. 人类把煤和油从地下开采出来。
3. 一个孕妇把他从苏州河救了起来。

4. 这条路是从那条公路急转过来的。
5. 有肉的香味从厨房那边吹了来。
6. 他从书本上学习了英语。
7. 这些水果是从我们自己的园子里摘来的。
8. 他是上星期从英国来的。
9. 他是冰岛人。
10. 现在我们距离北京有多少公里？

注意例组4-6中例句8和9的差别，例句9用的现在时态从而表达了一般真实性，亦即说明了他的出身籍贯，这是英语的习惯用法；例句8用的过去时态，说明了“他已经来了”这一已成事实并且是从哪里来的，英国只是他的出发点而不一定是他的出身地。例句10中“距离北京”也就是“从北京到现在这里”。其它例句都是清楚地表达了“从XC来”。

2) Away from是以away来突出离开的意思，即
 away from XC→从XC离开， (XC12)
 如果没有这个意思，则还是用from为宜。

例组 4-7

1. Neptune is pulling Uranus away from its proper orbit.
2. About ten kilometers away from Beijing a man is hiding somewhere.
3. Take that knife away from the child.
4. He is away from home.
5. The manager is away from his office.

译文 4-7

1. 海王星正在把天王星从它本来的轨道上拉出去。
2. 距离北京约十公里处有个人正躲藏着。
3. 把那把刀从那孩子手边拿开。
4. 他出门去了 (或他不在家)。
5. 那经理不在他的办公室。

例组4-7各例句都具有离开的意义是明显的。但例句4和5的汉译, 如果是“他从家离开了”, 就含糊不清: “他从办公室离开了”更易误解为他已辞职或调外勤。这里我们可以注意到away from也可以是at的否定词, 而属于XA, 即
away from XA = not at XA → 不在XA (XA12)

3) off XC → 从XC上离去或下来。 (XC13)

off也可以是on的否定词, 即 (例组4-7例句5)

off XA = not on XA → 不在XA上 (XA13)

例组 4-8

1. We are going to turn off the main road.
2. Giraffes eat the tender leaves off tall trees.
3. The rain ran off the roof.
4. Tachen is an island off the coast of Zhejiang.
5. Now the book is off the desk.

译文 4-8

1. 我们快要从大路上拐出去了。
2. 长颈鹿从高高的树上吃掉嫩叶子。

3. 那雨水从屋顶上流下来。
4. 大陈是离浙江海岸不远的的一个岛。
5. 那本书现在已不在书桌上了。

4) out of XC → 从XC里离开或出来。 (XC14)

也可以是in的否定词, 即 (例组4-9例句10)

out of XA = not in XA → 不在XA里 (XA14)

例组 4-9

1. Moving faster and faster the atoms begin to fly out of their orbits.
2. We get oil out of the ground.
3. Some fishes jump out of the water to catch insects.
4. I have a feeling of being a fish out of water.
5. We stayed out of the noisy town.
6. We all ran out of the building.
7. He is looking out of the window.
8. No air can leak out of the cylinder.
9. All birds hatch out of eggs.
10. The pencil is out of the drawer.

译文 4-9

1. 运动越来越快时原子就开始从它们的轨道里飞出去。
2. 我们从地下开采出石油。
3. 有些鱼从水里跳出来捕食昆虫。

4. 我有一种象鱼儿离开了水的感觉。
5. 我们在远离闹市区安顿了下来。
6. 我们都从那大楼里跑了出来。
7. 他正从窗户里望出去。
8. 没有空气可以从那汽缸里漏出来。
9. 所有禽类都是从蛋里孵出来的。
10. 那铅笔已不在那抽屉里了。

5) of是英语中我们最常用的一介词，也是英语中出现频率最高的一个单词，介词of词组在句子中的主要并且极为重要的功能是名词修饰语，of的用途和用法之广也就表现在这一功能中，这将在以后集中予以讨论。这里我们回到出发点或脱离点的这一用法，of相当于介词from和out of，即

of XC → 从或距XC (XC15)

例组 4-10

1. I stood within five paces of the door.
2. The ship was wrecked within a mile of the coast.
3. The bullet went wide of the target.
4. She borrowed some salt of her neighbour.
5. All these books may be had of any book-seller.

译文 4-10

1. 我站在距房门五步之内。
2. 那船在离海岸一哩处失事。
3. 那子弹远离靶子飞了出去。

4. 她从她的邻居借了一些盐。
5. 所有这些书可以从任何书店买到。

从例组4-10可以看出：例句1和2分别是‘距房门五步’和‘离海岸一哩’，而不能是‘房门的五步’和‘海岸的一哩’，因而of词组不是名词修饰语；，例句3~5也是这样，并且更明显。

用于出发点的介词 from, away from, off, out of和 of都表明事物从XC离开，它们的区别在于：from和away from是用于XC为一般处所而可以看成是个点；off用于线或面，out of用于面积或体积，而of则对点，线，面，和面积以及体积均适用。

4.4 到达点

到达点是指事物到达或走向的终点。用于到达点的介词有to, onto和into。

1) To 用于所到达的点可以认为是一个点的一般处所，它与from相对应并联用在一起。

$$\text{to XC} \rightarrow \begin{cases} \text{到达} \\ \text{走向} \end{cases} \text{XC} \quad (\text{XC16})$$

在后一种情况，to与toward可以通用，不过后者着重于方向而前者重于到达点。

例组 4-11

1. The first visit to the moon lasted 21 hours and 37 minutes.
2. He held the book to the light in order to see better.

3. The stone sank to the bottom of the pond.
4. The host showed me to the door.
5. The light rays converged to a sharp focus.
6. We will soon come to a sharp bend.
7. He is sitting with his feet to the fire.
8. You have to turn to the right here.
9. The large lake is to the west of the small one.
10. When we are tired, we go to bed.
11. Rivers flow from the mountains to the sea.
12. From Beijing to Kwanzhou is a long journey.
13. A flash of lightning is electricity jumping from cloud to cloud or from a cloud to the ground.
14. The pendulum can swing from side to side.
15. 'Along' indicates movement or a passage from one point of a line to another.

译文 4-11

1. 第一次到达月球的探视一共持续了21个小时37分钟。
2. 他把书举到灯光下以便看得更清楚些。
3. 那石块已下沉到这水塘的底部。
4. 那主人把我送到门口。
5. 那光线聚集到一个鲜明的焦点。
6. 我们很快会碰到一个急转弯。
7. 他正把脚向着火炉而坐着。

8. 你必须在这里向右拐。
9. 那大湖是在这小湖往西。
10. 当我们累了，我们就（上床）去睡觉。
11. 江河都是从高山流入大海。
12. 从北京到广州是一个较长的旅程。
13. 闪电是从云层到云层或从云层到地面的电流。
14. 摆锤可以从一侧摆到另一侧。
15. 介词along 是用来表达从一条线的一点到另一点的运动或路径。

例组4-11中例句10的上床是虚指的，意即睡觉，上床可以省去。句11~15是from与to联用的例子。

2) Onto与off相对应，即

onto XC→到XC上 (XC17)

例组 4-12

1. The baby fell onto the floor.
2. Help me lift this suitcase onto the seat.
3. We are turning onto a main road.
4. The ball rolled onto the goal line.
5. Some sea animals live and grow onto rocks:

译文 4-12

1. 那婴儿已掉到地板上。
2. 帮我把这只衣箱提到座位上。
3. 我们正在拐到大路上去。
4. 那球已滚到了球门线上。
5. 有些海里动物生活并成长在岩石上。

3) Into与out of相对应, 即

into XC→进入或到XC里 (XC18)

例组 4-13

1. Moon's weak gravity let the gases slip away into space.
2. The Yangtze flows into the East Sea.
3. We sent an unmanned rocket into earth orbit.
4. He was shown into the manager's office.
5. They crowded into the street.
6. She sank wearily into a chair.
7. He reached into a drawer and took out a pencil.
8. The police tore into the crowd.
9. Something hard and shining was pressed into his hands.
10. He inserted a word into the sentence.

译文 4-13

1. 月球的微弱引力容许气体逃到太空里去。
2. 长江流进了东海里 (注入东海)。
3. 我们把一个无人驾驶的火箭送入了地球的轨道里。
4. 他被引进了经理的办公室里。
5. 他们拥进了街道里。
6. 她疲倦地倒在一把椅子里。
7. 他把手伸进了抽屉里而拿出了一支铅笔。

8. 那警察冲进了人群里。
9. 一件硬而光亮的东西塞进了他的手里。
10. 他把一个单词添注到那句子里。

练习 4-2

在下列句子中择优填入出发点和到达点的介词、并汉译各句。

1. We buy fruits...the market.
2. It is only a few kilometers...our house.
3. The dog chased the stranger...the garden.
4. He took the coat...the hook.
5. He went...the front door and push it.
6. I had it just as we stepped...the platform here.
7. This stream falls...the Yangtze right here.
8. Some of these electrons jump...the hot wire.
9. Take the peel...the orange.
10. The sun cannot light the side of the earth that is turned...it.
11. We heard a faint sound...the next room.
12. He ran...the street as fast as possible.
13. He drew up a chair...the table.
14. The boy is walking...his bicycle.
15. She thrust a walking-stick...his hand.
16. They flew...the country.
17. He jumped...the train and landed...the platform.

18. Stars seen...the moon do not twinkle.
19. Children go ... school.
20. He was...school yesterday.
21. Your cat is...the table now.
22. They were admitted...the room.
23. This house is...the noisy street.
24. Fish cannot live...water.
25. The blood passes...the ventricle...the aorta.
26. He fell...the bed...the floor.
27. He jumped...the bed and rushed...the bath-
room.
28. Come...the house...the rain.
29. The oar splashed...and...the water.
30. Step...this ladder but be careful you don't fall...
it.
31. Then they could move...the water...the land.
32. 'Through' indicates movement...one end of a
passage and... the other.

4.5 相对定向

相对定向是指事物的活动相对说来有一定的方向；同时，活动的结果事物即在相应的位置或地方。所以这一方向的介词主要用于XC，但也可用于XB，

- | | | |
|----|----------------|--------|
| 1) | upXC→上XC | (XC9) |
| 及 | upXB→在XB... | (XB9) |
| 2) | down XC→下XC | (XC10) |
| 及 | down XB→在XB... | (XB10) |

up和down是一对相对定向而意义广阔的介词，它们的意义可以概括为上行和下行，包括：按地势的高低分为上升和下降；按河流的流向分为上游和下游；按地区的纬度分为北上和南下等等。

例组 4-14

1. I have been up the Tai Mountain.
2. There is much snow up the country.
3. Her hair was hanging down her back.
4. He lived farther up (down) the road.
5. He has a farm up (down) the river.
6. He had to get off the bike and push it up the hill.
7. Some fish go up stream in spring.
8. Now you can start to coast down the slope.
9. The odor came down the wind.
10. I saw him going up (down) the hill.
11. He managed to climb up (down) the drain-pipe.
12. He ran his eyes down the advertisement.
13. It's always easier to drift down stream than to paddle up it.

译文 4-14

1. 我已登上过泰山。
2. 在那国家的北方下了不少雪，(XB)
3. 她的头发下垂到她的背部。

4. 他住在这条街再往上(下)首。
5. 他有个农庄在那条河的上(下)游。(XB)
6. 他不得不下了车并把它推上山。
7. 有些鱼到春天游往上游。
8. 你现在可以开始顺坡向下滑行了。
9. 那气味顺风而下。
10. 我看到他走上(下)山去(来)了。
11. 他设法爬上(下)了那排水管。
12. 他把他的眼睛顺着广告栏往下扫视。
13. 顺流漂下比逆流向上划总是要容易得多。

3) Aboard只限用于空间, 并且专用于各种交通工具; 它是不可逆的。

aboard XC→上XC(舟、车、飞机, …) (XC20)
及 aboard XA→在XA(舟、车、飞机, …)上(XA20)

例组 4-15

1. I got aboard the train just in time.
2. I won table tennis champion aboard President Coolidge.
3. After eight days in space, they splashed down in the Pacific and got aboard the recovery carrier.
4. Through television, hundred of millions of people were watching the activities aboard Columbia.
5. Flying behind the moon his tape recorder aboard Columbia became his only companion

to talk to.

译文 4-15

1. 我正好及时上了火车。
2. 我在柯立芝总统号船上夺取了乒乓球比赛的冠军。
(XA)
3. 在太空中度过了八天后, 他们溅落在太平洋中并登上了回收母舰。
4. 通过电视, 上亿的人都在收看(在)哥伦比亚号上的各种活动。(XA)
5. 在月球背面飞行时他所带上哥比亚号的录音带就成为他可以交谈的唯一伴侣。

练习 4-3

把up和down填入下列各句并汉译。

1. I saw a monkey...the tree.
2. He know there is a village...the side road.
3. Smoke goes...the chimney.
4. The logs floated...the river.
5. The tears ran...her face.
6. It is harder to go...the stairs than it is to come...them.

4.6 参考方向

所有参考方向是指事物与它所在或发生的空间具有这样或那样的方向上关系。我们有:

- 1) alongside XC→并着XC; (XC26)

- 2) next to XC→挨着XC; (XC27)
- 3) opposite XC→对着XC; (XC28)
- 4) near XC→靠近XC, (XC29)

其中：alongside的参考方向是一条线；其余没有明确规定，一般为处所。

例组 4-16

1. As we were waiting at the traffic lights, another car drove up alongside ours.
2. The vessel anchored alongside the quay.
3. I don't like wear wool next to my skin.
4. Who is at the table next to ours.
5. He stopped at the door next to that of the girl.
6. The place opposite the bank is a supermarket.
7. When I stand alone before the mirror, the image opposite me was no one else but me.
8. There is another man opposite him.
9. The lady opposite my mother is still talking.
10. His house is opposite ours.
11. Penguins live in cold places near the South Pole.
12. The ground near Yingtai suddenly moved one meter to one side.
13. To turn a coil of wire near the magnet, a current is generated.

14. Near the house stands an old pagoda.
15. We are too near the band.

译文 4-16

1. 当我们正在红绿灯处等待时，另一辆车开上来并着我们的车停下。
2. 那条船并着码头抛了锚。
3. 我不喜欢贴着皮肤穿羊毛织品。
4. 挨着我们桌子的那座位旁边是谁？
5. 他在那姑娘房间贴隔壁的门前停了下来。
6. 对着银行的那地方是个超级市场。
7. 当我独自在镜子面前站着时，对着我的映像不是别的什么人而就是我自己。
8. 在他的对面有另一个男人。
9. (在)我母亲对面的那位太太还是在谈着。
10. 他的屋子是在我们的对面。
11. 企鹅是生长在靠近南极的寒冷地方。
12. 靠近邢台的地面突然向一侧滑移了一米。
13. 靠近那磁铁转动一线圈时，电流就产生了。
14. 靠近那屋子耸立一座古塔。
15. 我们是太靠近那乐队了。

由于上面四个介词，除了alongside外，用时接着(next to) 或者可以接着to(opposite to和near to)，同时在译文中文都可以带有“着或靠”。因之，把它们归属于XC。从例组4-16看，其中不少例子也可以归属于位置XB，这需要进一步探讨。

在下列句子中择优填入参考方向的介词并逐句汉译。

1. The bus stop is just...the post office.
2. Some animals live...water, coasting along ...
the top.
3. There is another man standing...my boy.
4. The dog ran...me all the day.
5. The small child was afraid to go...the dog.
6. I glanced...the person who sat...me.
7. May I bring my chair...yours?
8. The water may flood all the land...it.

第五章 路径区域

路径区域是指事物存在或发生以不同的方式所占有或经过的空间。我们可以归纳为一般的经过，经由或取道，定向的轨迹，占有或遍及的面积和体积。

5.1 经过

1) Past用在这里就是单纯的过，即

past XD→过XD (XD1)

例组 5-1

1. Other flights going past Venus are planned.
2. My house stands a little past the junction.
3. We drove past the town hall.
4. A bullet whistled past me.
5. The driver took the bus past the traffic light.

译文 5-1

1. 飞过金星的其它宇航计划已得到安排。
2. 我的房子坐落在略微过了那交叉路口。
3. 我们开车经过了那市政厅。
4. 一颗子弹在我们身旁呼哨而过。
5. 那司机把公共汽车穿过了交通信号灯。

2) Beyond也是经过, 在这一用法上常可与past通用, 例如例组5-2的句5, 即

beyond XD→过XD, (XD2)

但beyond也可以作“在那一边”解:

beyond XB→在XB的那一边, (XB24)

而past则不能, 两者通用时要注意。

例组 5-2

1. The ship disappeared beyond the horizon.
2. Beyond the fire the jungle reverated with noise.
3. I could see the town beyond the lake.
4. It happened not beyond, but on this side of the bridge.
5. His house is beyond (past) those hills.
6. There is a village beyond the bus stop.
7. They flew beyond the Alps.
8. Beyond the rapids, they continued due south.
9. Don't go beyond the frontier.
10. The post office is beyond the turn of the road.

译文 5-2

1. 那只船消失在地平线的那一边。
2. 在营火的那一边丛林中回荡着嚎叫声。
3. 我看得到这湖那一边的市镇。

4. 这发生在没有过桥，而是在桥的这一边。
5. 他的房屋过了那些山便是。
6. 过了汽车站有个村子。
7. 他们飞过了阿尔卑斯山。
8. 过了湍流，他们继续向南前进。
9. 不要越过国境线。
10. 那邮局在过了这条路的拐角便是。

5.2 经由

- 1) By不仅是经过，而且还是经由，即
by XD→经由或过XD

(XD17)

By作在XB旁边讲见第三章3.4节，式XB17。

例组 5-3

1. Did you come by the nearest road?
2. We came by the fields, not by the road.
3. The best way to enter is by the front door.
4. We travelled to Shanghai by Nanjing and Su-
zhou.
5. We went by the shop without seeing it.

译文 5-3

1. 你是不是抄最近的路来的？
2. 我们是穿过田野来的，没有走大路。
3. 进来的最好方法是走前门。
4. 我们经过南京和苏州旅行到了上海。
5. 我们走过那店铺而竟没有看到它。

2) Via是经由或取道, 即

via XD→经由XD

(XD18)

这与by在这一用法上可以通用。

例组 5-4

1. We went to Kunming via Hanoi in 1940.
2. We flew from Beijing to Lanzhou via Xian.
3. He is on the way to Pakistan via the Silk Route.

译文 5-4

1. 我们是(在)1940年取道河内去昆明的。
2. 我们从北京经西安飞到了兰州。
3. 他正经由丝绸之路在去巴基斯坦的旅途上。

练习 5-1

择优填入前两节中的以及前面各章中用于空间的(如有)各介词, 并逐句汉译。

1. My last stone went a long way...the mark.
2. He walked...the gate without entering.
3. He passed...me without seeing me.
4. I go...his office every day.
5. The woods go for about two miles...the river.
6. Who is the man who has just run...me?
7. We came...China...Japan.
8. We saw peak...peak.
9. He hurried...me without stopping to speak.

10. Who is that man who has just gone...the window.

5.3 定向轨迹

定向轨迹是指事物的存在或活动有各种不同的线, 面, 或体积与它相交, 相并和相连, 概括说来是通过

1) Across是事物以垂直或接近垂直的方向从空间的一侧交叉而到达另一侧, 即

across XD→横过XD (XD?)

例组 5-5

1. There are several bridges across the river.
2. We saw a beautiful rainbow across the sky.
3. Powerful engines drive these airplanes across the ocean.
4. She is the first girl swimming across the channel.
5. They passed across the grass land.
6. Don't walk across the street until the traffic light turns green.
7. He drew a line across the sheet of paper.
8. A shadow moves across his face.
9. The spark jumps across the gap between the two ends of the wires
10. The post office is just across the street.

译文 5-5

1. 跨过那条河有好几座桥。

2. 我们看到了一条五彩缤纷的虹横贯天空。
3. 强大的发动机驱使这些飞机横渡大洋。
4. 她是第一个游泳横渡海峡的女子。
5. 他们越过了草地。
6. 在交通信号轮换到绿灯以前不要穿过马路。
7. 他横过那张纸画了一条线。
8. 一个影子横过他的面部在移动。
9. 火花跳过两根电线端点之间的空隙。
10. 那邮局过街便是。

注意到不论是静的还是动的, across都可汉译为介词的“过”。特别值得考虑的是上面的例句10,通常都汉译为“…在街的对过”,这种译法是可以为中国人所接受的;但是,一条街能不能有什么‘对过’?所以我们认为还是汉译“过街”为好。

2) Along XD是指事物所在或活动的空间是沿着或平行于一个线段从一点到另一点。即

along XD → 沿着XD而过 (XD8)

其中“而过”不一定是“过”,视所用动词而定,实际上“沿”字本身具有较强的动词口气。所以,象对 across 一样,我们对along也不分静与动。

例组 5-6

1. The road runs along the coastline.
2. Trees are planted along the streets.
3. Many people died along the way when crossing the plain.
4. There are some laces along the edges of the tablecloth.

5. There were muddy foot marks all along the corridor.
6. Half way along the passage he stood back to allow a lady to pass him.
7. How many buses come along this route?
8. We walked along the railway line.
9. Pass along the car please.
10. He passed along the table a small card-board box.

译文 5-6

1. 那条路是沿着海岸线伸展的。
2. 沿着各街道都种了树。
3. 过平原时许多人沿路死去。
4. 沿着那桌布的各边缘都有花边。
5. 沿着整个走廊都有泥的足印。
6. 沿着过道半路处，他退后站开以便让那位太太走过。
7. 沿这条路线有多少公共汽车在行驶？
8. 我们顺着铁道线散了步。
9. 请顺着车厢往前走。
10. 他把一个小纸板盒子顺着桌面推递过去。

3) Through的一个概括意义是通过，即
through XD→通过XD

(XD12)

例组 5-7

1. Get the thread through the eye of the needle, please.

2. The River Han flows through Wuhan.
3. Earthworms crawl through the earth getting their food.
4. High mountains stick up through the clouds.
5. The train rushed through the tunnel.
6. A thin roof lets the heat go through it.
7. Fishes have a special way of breathing through gills.
8. No current can flow through the insulation.
9. Light waves travel through space and various materials.
10. The wind blows through the trees.

译文 5-7

1. 请你把这根线穿过针眼。
2. 汉水穿过武汉奔流。
3. 蚯蚓钻过泥土爬行以觅取食物。
4. 高山穿过云层耸立着。
5. 那列车疾驰穿过了隧道。
6. 薄薄屋顶让热器透过它发散掉。
7. 鱼类有通过鳃呼吸的特殊方法。
8. 没有电流可以流过绝缘体。
9. 光波是通过空间和各种材料向前传播。
10. 那风是穿过树林吹来的。

从例组5-7的各句我们可以看到：通过XD可以是从线段的一端到另一端，但不同于沿着一线段的along XD而是穿过它的空间；也可以是从一侧到另一侧，但不同于横过一线

段的across XD, 而是透过一个面或一个体积。

4) Over表达定向轨迹时, 事物既是过XD而同时又是在XD的上面过去, 即

over XD→越过XD (XD4)

例组 5-8

1. An oil engine can drive the ship over the sea.
2. We have flown over the area several times.
3. Water flows over the dam when it rises above the dam.
4. Short radio waves can carry messages over great distance.
5. You must cross over the bridge that span the river.
6. He hopped over the brook.
7. He is over the bar now.
8. She has thrown him over her shoulder.
9. He escaped over the frontier.
10. His home is over the hill.

译文 5-8

1. 柴油机可以把船开过大海。
2. 我们已多次飞越过那区域。
3. 当水升到高于水坝时水即流过水坝。
4. 无线电短波可以把信息越过远距离传递。
5. 你必须越过那架在河上的大桥。
6. 他跳过了那小溪。

7. 他现在已跳过那横杆了。
8. 她把从她的肩上摔了过去。
9. 他逃过了国境线。
10. 他的家过那小山便是。

5) Around和round表达定向轨迹时, 事物既过XD而又绕XD四周的一部分过去, 即

around or round XD → 绕过XD (XD22/23)

(美国英语常用around, 而英国英语用round。)

例组 5-9

1. The earth makes a complete journey round the sun in one year.
2. We rode our bicycles round the Tienanmen square.
3. We haven't time to go round the museums and art galleries.
4. He flashed a torch around the big hall.
5. The concrete is casted round the steel rod in tension.
6. Many insects fly round the light.
7. To avoid a puddle of water, you must walk around it.
8. The distance round the earth is 24,900 miles.

译文 5-9

1. 地球以一年的时间完成绕太阳一周的旅程。
2. 我们绕天安门广场骑了自行车。

3. 我们没有时间去博物馆和艺术厅转一圈。
4. 他把电筒绕那大厅照了一转。
5. 三合土是绕着受拉钢筋予以浇注的。
6. 许许多多昆虫围着灯光飞行。
7. 为了躲开水坑, 你必须绕过它走。
8. 绕地球一圈的距离为24,900英里。

6) With 的主要意义是伴随, 在这里表明事物的存在或发生是同XD相连, 相通, 相平行, 等在一起, 概括为

with XD → 同XD...在一起 (XD20)

例组 5-10

1. This room is connected with the toilet.
2. The compass is level with the horizon.
3. The pilot communicated with the airport.
4. He mingled with the crowd and was lost.
5. You were the only doctor with us there.

译文 5-10

1. 这一房间是同卫生间相连的。
2. 那指南针是同地平线相平的。
3. 那飞机驾驶员已同航空站通了讯息。
4. 他已同人群混杂在一起而找不到了。
5. 你是同我们一起在那里的唯一医生。

练习 5-2

在下列各句中择优填入定向轨迹的各介词, 并逐句汉译。

1. How did you get...the ocean?
2. The river winds...the countryside.
3. Willows grow...the river bank.
4. We walked...the hard-packed snow.
5. The distance...the earth is 40,000 kilometers.
6. There road runs parallel...the river.
7. There is a small foot path...the forest.
8. The river had frozen over so we skated...it.
9. He drew a line...the sheet of paper.
10. There is a border of shrubs...each side of the path.
11. He drove on...the thunderstorm.
12. His house is...the hill.
13. A shadow moves...his face.
14. He had to walk...the mud to get...the street.
15. I go...the road, ...a gate and...a park.
16. I go...the park and...it...a gate...the other side.
17. Don't place the keys...your wallet.
18. Mother was...the children.

5.4 距离和区域

表达事物所占有或经过的距离，以及事物所散布或遍及的区域时，我们有下列介词：

- | | | | | | | | |
|----|--------|----|----|--------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 1) | for | XD | → | 有或经过XD | (XD6) | | |
| 2) | about | } | XD | → | { | 在XD到处 | (XD21/22) |
| 3) | around | | | | | | |

- 4) over XD→遍及XD (XD4)
 5) throughout XD→传遍XD (XD11)

例组 5-11

1. We have jogged (for) two miles already.
2. For miles and miles there's not a house to be seen.
3. The road is lined with trees for ten miles.
4. Sentries were posted about the city.
5. Books and papers were lying about (around) the room.
6. He is wandering around (about) the campus.
7. He is travelling about(around) the world.
8. Peace would then reign over the world.
9. A feeling of uneasiness swept over me.
10. He is famous all over the world.
11. The news broadcasted throughout the world.
12. The epidemic has spread throughout the village.

译文 5-11

1. 我们已经慢步跑有两哩了。
2. 几哩几哩的过去而没有一所房屋看得到。
3. 那路边成行种了树有十哩之遥。
4. 哨兵在城里到处站了岗。
5. 书和报纸散在房里到处都是。
6. 他正在校园里到处徘徊着。
7. 他正在世界上到处旅游。
8. 到那时和平会在整个世界上占上风。

9. 一种不安的感觉掠过了我的全身。
10. 他的声望遍及整个世界（誉满全球）。
11. 那消息已在整个世界上得到广播。
12. 那流行病已经传遍了整个村子。

练习 5-3

择优填入距离和范围以及其它介词并汉译。

1. We have friends...the world.
2. They wandered...the barren, rockstrewn surface of the moon.
3. We walked...short distance and parted.
4. He painted all...the wall.
5. We cannot see the air, but there is air...us.
6. He has travelled all...Asia.
7. If opponent gets in his way, he tries to get...or ...the opponent.
8. Glance...the room and see if you know somebody here.
9. The cowlips dotted...the field.
10. The children left their toys scattered...the room.

5.5 介词用于空间的小结

• 用于空间的介词，按照它们的用法以及介词词组的译意，可以把它们小结如下。

表达地点XA的有：at, on, (upon 极少用于空间) 和 in, 以及它们的否定词表达事物存在或发生的地点；总的译意是“在”；“在上”和“在里”则是区别。

表达位置 XB 的有: above, below, beneath, over, under, on top of, underneath, in front of, behind, inside, outside, within, beside, by, between, amid, among, about, around, round, 表达事物存在或发生的相对位置; 总的译意是“在XB的那一面”, 包括上/下面; 前/后面; 里/外面; 居中/两侧, 以及中间/四周。

表达方向 XC 的有: at, on, (in), toward(s), for, against, up, down, aboard, from, away from, off, out of, of, to, onto, into, alongside, next to, opposite, near, 表达事物存在或发生的目标, 目的地, 出发点, 到达点; 译意为“朝, 向, 往, 从, 到”, 以及“靠/挨/对着”。

表达路径 XD 的有: past, beyond, by, via, across, along, through, over, around, with, for, through-out; 表达事物存在或发生时所经过的点, 线, 面和体积, 以及所遍及的区域; 总的译意可以概括为“过”和“遍”。

部分二 介词用于时间

用于时间的介词表达事物与它存在或发生的时间之间的关系。时间可以是具体的年月日时等，也可以是别的事物存在或发生的时间。

用于时间的介词在用法上的划分，我们可以引用空间介词的划分方法列为下列四类：

YA：简单时间，相当于空间的地方；

YB：相对时间，相当于空间的位置；

YC：起迄时间，相当于空间的方向；

YD：经历时间，相当于空间的路径。

这样划分不仅时间与空间在用法上门当户对，而且各用法中所用介词也基本上相同。用于时间的介词数量较少，还包括若干专用介词。

第六章 简单时间

简单时间是指事物存在或发生的那个时间，而不是在它以前以后，也不是从它向前往后，也不是事物经过一段时间。

在这一用法中的介词主要有三个，即at, on和in。它们的共同含意是“在”什么时间；它们在用法上是以时间的长

短久暂来区分。象地方的大小是相对的，时间的长短也是相对的。我们要在不同的范围内来区分时间的长短，以及按另一事物存在或发生的特点来区分时间的久暂或缓急。一般说来，从at而on以至in是按时间由短到长，事物由急到缓来选用，试列表如下以供参考。此外，时间有时也有泛指的或特指的，介词的选用也有所不同，应当注意。

表 6-1

	at	on	in
一生之计	年龄		年代，世纪
一年之计	年初，月终，周末	何日，星期几，节日	周，月，季 年，
一日之计	钟点，黎明，黄昏	特指的单元	单元：上午，晚上，夜间，
别的事物	发生时刻，即景	发生时机，靠近	发生过程，进行中

6.1 时刻和年龄

按照表6-1，at用于作为一个点的时间：

at YA → 在YA时刻 (YA1)

例组 6-1

1. Work begins at eight sharp.
2. It usually gets dark at 6 : 30.
3. The ship will leave at dawn.
4. He will be home at the week-end.
5. You must excuse my inconvenient visit at so early an hour.
6. At the beginning of the month I was sick.
7. Children usually start school at the age of six.
8. She was interested in music at an early age.

9. At night, you can see the stars.
10. The stores are usually crowded at New Year.
11. There is only one idea at the moment.
12. We were passing over the sea at that moment.
13. She came exactly at the time lecture begins.
14. The amount of energy remains constant at all times.
15. We are living at a time when machines do work which men used to do.
16. The question is at present unsolved.
17. He asked me to come at once.
18. Everything turned out all right at the end.
19. She was sick at the sight of the blood.
20. At this news he hurried home.

译文 6-1

1. 工作(在)八点正开始。
2. 通常(在)六点半开始天黑。
3. 那船将于黎明启航。
4. 他将于周末回家。
5. 请你务必原谅我在这样清早来打扰。
6. (在)这个月月初我病了。
7. 儿童通常(在)六岁时开始上学。
8. 她早在幼年时即对音乐感兴趣。
9. 一到黑夜你就可以看到星星。
10. 商店在新年时总是人山人海。
11. (在)此时此刻只有一个念头。

12. 我们(在)那时正飞临大海。
13. 他正好在演讲开始时到达。
14. 能量的总和在任何时保持不变。
15. 我们正生活在机器做着本来由人做的工作的时代。
16. 那问题(在)目前还没有得到解决。
17. 他要我立刻就来。
18. 事情终于变得一切顺利。
19. 他一见到血(时)就感到恶心。
20. 他一听到那消息就急忙回家。

我们从例组6-1中可以指出：

例句1~8都是钟点，年龄，以及时期的起点，中点和终点。在汉译中，“在”字往往可以省略（用括号表示）。

例句9和10中的night和new year都是泛指，意指夜间和新年期的任何时刻，亦即一到夜晚和新年，而不是指整个夜间或元旦，否则要分别用in和on（见6.2和6.3节）。

例句11和12中moment本身原是短暂时刻；例句13~15中的time则分别受到“开始”，“任何”等限制而可以理解为短暂；例句16~18中的at present, at once和at the end都是表达短暂时间的习惯用语。

例句19和20中从事情的发生和引起的反应来看，它们都是即时景象。

6.2 日期和时机

我们以前常听说“做一日和尚撞一日钟”，而现在又经常对儿童说“好好学习，天天向上”，日子一直是我们的生活和工作所接触的基本时间单位，与on用于空间时以事物触接XA为条件一样，这里我们也用on，即

on YA → 在YA日 (YA2)

我们还常说“待机而动”，时机也是事物活动的依据，所以

on YA → 在YA同时(后) (YA2a)

例组 6-2

1. He will be here on Monday.
2. The rent is due on the tenth.
3. They left yesterday.
4. There was a big parade on Labour Day.
5. It happened on the following day.
6. We shall meet again on May 4th.
7. A man came on Monday morning to see the new machine.
8. A meeting was held last Thursday.
9. An account of the meeting appeared in the press (on) Saturday last.
10. I will see you perhaps (on) Tuesday week.
11. He sent me out on a wet day like this.
12. It would be a crime to send the boy out on such a cold wet night.
13. I send you my best wishes on this happy occasion.
14. He plans to visit you on his vacation.
15. on hearing the crash, he rushed out of the house.
16. He changed his wet clothes on reaching home.
17. On arriving here, he had a good rest first.
18. You will be released from prison on the comple-

tion of your sentence.

19. The clock always strikes on the hour.

20. It is very important that we get there on time.

译文 6-2

1. 他将在星期一来到这里。
2. 房租定于十日到期交付。
3. 他们已于昨天出发了。
4. (在)劳动节有个盛大游行。
5. 那事情发生在第二天。
6. 我们将在五月四日再见。
7. (在)星期一上午有个人来看过那新机器。
8. 会议是(在)上星期四举行的。
9. 会议的报道已披露在上星期六的报纸上。
10. 我也许(在)下一个星期二来看你。
11. 他竟在这样一个下雨天派了我出去。
12. 叫那孩子在这样一个寒冷而下雨的晚上外出是一种犯罪行为。
13. 在这一愉快的时日我向你致以最美好的祝愿。
14. 他计划在他的假日来看望你。
15. (在)听到那爆裂声后, 他冲出了屋外。
16. (在)回到家后他就把湿衣服换掉。
17. (在)到达这里后, 他首先好好地休息了一下。
18. 在服满你刑期后你将从狱中得到释放。
19. 那只钟总是到点报时的。
20. 我们准时到达那里是非常紧要的。

在例组6-2中我们可以指出：

例句1~6是各种日子，例句6的on May 4th相当于on the 4th of May, May作为修饰语。

例句7与例句6外表相似，Wonday象是morning的修饰语，照表6-2单元时间应用in；实际上，这句的意思应着重Wonday, morning只是一个附注，即所谓特指单元，按英语习惯用on。

例句8中的last Thursday本身已可以作为副词性状语用，无须再加介词来表达，所以这里的on不仅可以而且必须略去。其它如yesterday(例句3), tomorrow, next Monday等都同样如此。

但在例句9和10的Saturday last和Tuesday week前的on可用不用。事实上，在日子前的on都可用可不用，这要看它的前后用词而不致引起误解而定。

例句11和12中a wet day和a wet night前都用on，虽然它们有day和night的区别，但都属于坏天气，是一种时机，所以都用on。

例句13的happy occasion可以理解为吉日良辰，也是一种时机(occasion)；例句14的vacation可以解释为假日或假期，但从整个句子看也可把它理解为时机。

例句15~18中on的后面各紧接着一种活动，这些活动虽都是短暂的，但却是另一事物发生的必然依据，所以要用on。这几句与例组6-1中例句19和20有相似之处，即各句中各含有两件事物之间的因果关系(见ZC章)，但在at后面的都属于瞬时所见所闻的刺激，以及产生的反应都有一定的偶然性。

例句19和20中的on the hour和on time都是习惯用语，

它们只说明一般情况而都可以说是虚指的。

6.3 年月和单元

用于简单时间的另一个介词是in。它在这一用法中的特点是事物存在或发生是在所指的时间中，即

in YA → 在YA中 (YA3)

这里YA可以是具体时间的一个单元，如上午，夜间，月份，年份，年代，世纪等；也可以是活动的一个过程，如writing a book, house keeping(见例组1-6中例句10和14)。

例组 6-3

1. We have had two world wars in the 20th century.
2. We have made many improvements in the last decade.
3. In all my life I have never heard such nonsense before.
4. He found himself in the midst of Chinese Spring Festival.
5. He has met many famous men in his time.
6. She is in her teen-age.
7. He is a man in his seventies.
8. I was born in 1908.
9. It will be very hot here in July.
10. In the summer months the reading-room will only be open in the morning.
11. We have had little snow this winter.

12. There is a concert this afternoon.
13. The lecture is given in the evening.
14. I returned at 11 o'clock in the night on the 15th.
15. My friend called in my absence.
16. He cheated in the final examination.
17. Don't hesitate in doing anything good and correct.
18. In energy transformation, there is some loss but none is destroyed.
19. The letter reached us in time.
20. We can reserve seats for you, only if you pay in advance.

译 文 6-3

1. 在二十世纪里我们已经有过两次世界大战。
2. 在上一个年代里我们已经作出了不少改进。
3. 在我整个一生中我还从没有听到过这样的胡言乱语。
4. 他发觉自己正置身在欢庆的中国春节之中。
5. 在他一生的年代里他见到过许多有名人物。
6. 她正在她青春年华中。
7. 他是个年逾古稀的人。
8. 我出生于1908年。
9. 这里(在)七月中的气候是非常热的。
10. 在夏季月份里, 阅览室只在上午开放。
11. (在)今年冬季里我们几乎没有见到雪。
12. (在)今天下午有场音乐会。
13. 那演讲将在晚间举行。

14. 我是(在)十五日那天夜里十一点钟回来的。
15. 我的朋友在我不在时来找过我了。
16. 他在考试中作了弊。
17. 不要在做些有益而正确的事情时犹豫不决。
18. 在能量转换时, 会有些损耗而没有一点会被消灭。
19. 那封信及时到达了这里。
20. 我们可以替你留好座位, 只要你预先付钱。

在例组6-3中我们可以指出:

例句1~14都是各种时间的单元, 其中例句11和12的时间分别为this winter和this afternoon均属副词状语, 不要再加介词in, 解释见例组6-2中的例句8, 汉译中“在”也都可以不用。

例句15~18中表达的时间都是这种或那种活动的过程, 它们不是例组6-2的例句15~18中的那种短暂活动。

例句19和20的in time和in advance都是惯用语。

练习 6-1

择优把at, on或in填入并汉译下列各句。

1. Betty had a party...her birthday.
2. He was a famous writer...his day.
3. Everyone was happy...the start.
4. Everyone had a good time...the birthday celebration.
5. Umbrellas are in great demand...rainy days.
6. ...saying this, I do not imply any criticism of your work.
7. He arrived...his destination...the right time.

8. I'll be...the office...the morning.
9. They have a good broadcaster...the 6 o'clock news.
10. They were...time to go...the first boat.
11. ...that time, the mail was carried...the bus.
12. They are usually...church...Sunday morning.
13. He would do it...the presence of so many people.
14. They usually come...Sunday and always... noon.
15. It will still be light...5 o'clock.
16. We will leave...the train...the morning...six.
17. We may not be...time, but we will be...time for the main event.
18. The concert will be held...the park...this evening.
19. Meet me...8 o'clock...this evening.
20. Come to my home...9 o'clock...the evening.

第七章 相对时间

相对时间包括：说明年龄大小，时间的先后、迟早，时间之间、之内和左右等。

7.1 年龄的大小

对年龄大小我们通常说某人在几岁以上或以下，或者说他超过或不到几岁。用的介词有：

- 1) above YB→在YB以上； (YB1)
- 2) below YB→在YB以下； (YB2)
- 3) over YB→在YB以上，超过YB； (YB4)
- 4) under YB→在YB以下，不到YB， (YB5)

它们之间是可以分别彼此通用的，不过above和below的含意比较随便，而over和under则偏重于超过和不到，这与它们的其它用法相似。

例组 7-1

1. The child is under (below)ten-years of age.
2. Anyone under eighteen is not allowed to attend.
3. He is under the voting age.
4. He is an old man over(above)seventy.
5. He couldn't enter for the examination because he was over age.

译文 7-1

1. 那孩子还不到十岁。
2. 任何十八岁以下的人是不让参加的。
3. 他还不够选举年龄。
4. 他是个七十以上（或年逾古稀）的老人了。
5. 由于他已超龄，已不能报名参加考试。

7.2 时间的先后

1) Before表达事物的存在或发生是在所指时间YB以前，即

before YB → 在YB以前 (YB9)

其中YB可以是具体的时间或另一事物存在或发生的时间。

例 组 7-2

1. The motorcar was invented before my time.
2. Before 1800 nobody could take photographs.
3. In the spring everyday is longer than the day before it.
4. The Yintai earthquake of 1966 happened just before the middle of the day.
5. He did not get back before(till) six o'clock.
6. These devices are usually tested before installation.
7. He arrived just before dinner.
8. He stood outside the house before going in.
9. He always gets to office before me.

10. He said he'd be here before long.

译文 7-2

1. 汽车是在我所处的那个年代以前已得到发明。
2. 在1800年以前没有人会拍照。
3. 在春季里的每一天要比它以前的一天长。
4. 1966年的邢台地震发生在日中以前不久。
5. 他到六点钟才回来。
6. 这些设备在装配以前都通常受到检验。
7. 他正好在吃饭前到达。
8. 他在进去之前曾站立在那屋子的外边。
9. 他总是在我之前到达办公室。
10. 他说他不久要来这里。

在例组7-2中，例句1~5都表达了在具体时间以前，而例句6~10则表达了活动之前，它们都是清楚的。要注意的是：

例句5中before用于否定语气，这在英语习惯中相当于till与相应的肯定语气，它说明了一个事实“他没有在六点以前回来（约定时间）”或“他在六点以前没有回来”而现在已是回来了；但如果我们直译如前两句汉译，则不能说明“他到六点才回来”。

例句10的before long是习惯用语，相当于我们的习惯用语“不久”而不是“长久以前”。

2) Affer是before的逆义词，即

affer YB → 在YB以后， (YB10)

但affer的用途和含义都要比before广。

例组 7-3

1. After Spring comes Summer.
2. It is fifteen after(past) eleven.
3. He usually goes to bed after midnight.
4. He finally settled down after many years of moving around.
5. After a few months of intensive work a first batch of solar stoves came its birth.
6. He said after a pause.
7. It might be difficult to find their way back after dark.
8. The sun returns after the rain.
9. After a little time she joined us singing again.
10. He is always tired after the lecture.
11. He was happy to return home after living overseas for two years.
12. After having been discussed the report was published.
13. After the invention of money, trade increased.
14. Shut the door after you when you leave the room.
15. After you!

译文 7-3

1. 春季以后就是夏季来临, (春往夏来)。
2. 现在是十一(过)十五分。
3. 他通常在夜半以后睡觉。

4. 在（或经过）多年颠沛流离以后他终于定居下来了。
5. 在（或经过）几个月的专心竭力的工作后第一批太阳能灶问世了。
6. 他在略作停顿后又讲了下去。
7. （在）天黑后要找他们回来的路也许是困难的。
8. 雨停后太阳又出来了。（雨过天晴）。
9. 在停了（或过了）一息后她又重新加入我们唱着。
10. 他在讲课后老是感到疲劳。
11. 生活在海外两年后回到了家他感到愉快。
12. 在（经过）讨论后那报告得到了发表。
13. 在货币发明后，贸易增加了。
14. 你走出这房间时请随手把门关上。
15. 您先请。

在例组7-3中，例句1~9都表达了在具体时间（其中有个别是隐含的）之后，例句10~15则表达活动之后。可以注意到的是：各“在YB以后”基本上都可以是“过了YB”，这是很自然的，其次，以after表达时间关系的两方面事物有时还存在着它们之间的因果关系，最明显的如例句5,10和13。

例句14的shut the door after you是日常用语，意指你进进出出时要紧接着关门，也就是我们常说的“随手关门”。

例句15的after you也是日常用语，意思是表示“你先我后”的礼让，我们的习惯说的是前半句“您先请”，而英语习惯说的是后半句“我跟在您后面”。

7.3 时间的迟早

时间的早于或迟于YB在意义上与在YB以前或以后没有多大区别，但着重点有所不同。

1) Behind也是表达事物存在或发生在某一时间或活动之后，即

behind YB → 在YB之后 (YB12)

与after YB不同之处在于after YB具有紧跟YB的含意，着重点在after本身，所以它的引伸移用较广；而behind YB的着重点在YB，它可以是事物已迟于和落后YB，或者事物已成为YB的往事或遗留下来的事。

例组 7-4

1. The train is five minutes behind the schedule.
2. He arrived at the office ten minutes behind me.
3. He is always behind time with his payment.
4. Young men shouldn't be behind the times.
5. His ideas are well behind the times.
6. He is in some things behind his years.
7. All our difficulties are now behind us.
8. He left a wife and two children behind him.
9. He left a fortune behind him.
10. Shut the door behind you.

译文 7-4

1. 那列火车晚点五分钟（迟于时刻表五分钟）。
2. 他到达办公室迟于我十分钟。

3. 他老是迟付款项。
4. 青年人不应落后于时代。
5. 他的想法远远落后于时代。
6. 他在一些事情上落后于他的年龄。
7. 我们的一切困难已一去不复返。
8. 他身后留下了一个寡妇和两儿孤儿。
9. 他身后遗留下一笔财产。
10. 你随手把门关上。

在例组7-4中，例句1~3都表达了“迟于”；例句4~6表达于“落后于”，例句7~9中事物属于往事和身后之事；例句10的behind与after可以通用，behind you更常用些，用于这一词组多少含有空间关系。

2)BY是以一指定时间YB为标准，事物要到时完成或发生，着重在不迟于YB而不问在YB以前如何，这相当于汉语的“在YB边”，与用于空间的“在XB的旁边”相似，即

by YB→不迟于YB或在YB边 (YB17)

例 组 7-5

1. Can you finish the work by Labour Day?
2. I'm usually in bed by ten o'clock.
3. They are tired out by evening.
4. We'll be back by noon at the latest.
5. I'll have the job completed by ten o'clock tomorrow.
6. By the time you got there it will be dark.
7. The show was over by the time they came.
8. He should be back by now.

译文 7-5

1. 你能不能在五一节边完成那工作?
2. 我通常一到十点就睡觉。
3. 他们一到傍晚就累了。
4. 我们最晚也不会迟于中午回来。
5. 我一定要不迟于明天十点把那工作完成。
6. 等你到达那里时天将黑了。
7. 等到他们来时那电影早已完了。
8. 他(到)现在该回来了。

在例组7-5中, 例句1是暗指不迟于五一节; 例句8是指他通常回来的时间; 其余各句都是比较清楚的。

练习 7-1

择优填入before, after, behind 和by并汉译下列各句。

1. We are fifteen minutes...time already.
2. I shall be here...night.
3. Please come here...the first of next month.
4. Please be here...two o'clock.
5. I shall be free...five o'clock.
6. You are...the appointed time.
7. Her dress is...the times.
8. We usually play pingpong...school.
9. Our happy days in the college are far...us now.
10. Everyone will be gone...the time he gets there.
11. He died...liberation.
12. I got tired...such a long walk.

13. She bolted the door...her.
14. ...giving my answer, I will ask you some questions.
15. I felt sick...reaching home.
16. Though Lu Xin is dead, he still lives in the work he has left...him.
17. He finished quickly, a long time...the others.
18. We need to buy tickets...entering.
19. He ought to be here...this time.
20. Your hard days in prison are...you now.

7.4 时间之间和之内

1) Between用于空间的两个XB之间, 用于时间也是如此:

between YB₁ and YB₂ → 在YB₁与YB₂之间 (YB₁ < YB₂)

例组 7-6

1. June comes between May and July.
2. The sun comes up sometime between 6 and 7 in the morning.
3. It happened between the two world wars.
4. It occurred between his incoming and outgoing.

译文 7-6

1. 六月在五月与七月之间。
2. 太阳是在早晨六、七点之间某时刻升起来的。
3. 这发生在两次世界大战之间。
4. 这事情发生在他进进出出之间。

2) Within用于空间的区域之内, 也同样用于时间的区域, 即

Within YB→在YB之内 (YB15)

3) Inside也同样可以用于时间之内, 但语气不及within坚决, 后者更常用:

inside YB→在YB内 (YB13)

例组 7-7

1. You must pay me back within a month.
2. He will come again within a week.
3. The doctor will arrive within an hour.
4. Within(inside) a year, all was changed
5. He promised to arrive inside an hour.
6. I shall return inside a week.

译文 7-7

1. 你必须在一个月之内把钱还给我。
2. 他在一个星期之内还会再来。
3. 那医生将在一个小时之内到达。
4. 不到一年, 一切都变了。
5. 他已答应一个小时内到达。
6. 我将在一周内回来。

在例组7-7中我们可以看出: 例句1~3的语气都比较坚决, 例句1有“必须”自不必说, 例句2则在那期限内都可以来, 例句3中医生的事不能随便, 例句4中两个介词都可用, 例5和6只是答应而已。

7.5 大约时间

对这一用法的介词有about和around, 它们完全可以通用。

about YB→大约在YB	}	(YB21)
around YB→在YB左右		(YB22)

例组 7-8

1. He left the school about midnight.
2. He was in that accident about five years ago.
3. It is about ten o'clock.
4. I think it's about time you start to work.
5. It was around midnight when the phone rang.
6. She will be here around the first of the month.
7. I told him I'd meet him on the corner around 8 o'clock.
8. I'd judge his age to be around sixty.

译文 7-8

1. 他大约在半夜离开了学校。
2. 大约在五年前他介入了那车祸。
3. 现在大约是十点钟。
4. 我想现在差不多是你开始工作的时候了。
5. 电话铃响时大约是半夜。
6. 她将在月初前后到这里来。
7. 我已告诉他八点左右在拐角处我同他碰头。

8. 我估计他的年龄在六十上下。

练习 7-2

择优填入时间介词以及其它必要介词, 并汉译下列各句。

1. The accident occurred...three...the morning.
2. The burglary took place...midnight and dawn.
3. The train arrived...exactly four minutes...eight.
4. People who are...age may not join.
5. ...1949 and 1985, more than thirty thousand kilometers of railway have been built...China.
6. I'll be back...a week.
7. The earthquake took place...four...the morning.
8. He retired...his office because he is...age.
9. He fell asleep...one.. the morning.
10. The reaction took place...five minutes.

第八章 起迄时间

起迄时间包括事物存在或发生在时间上的目标, 开始, 距离, 和終了等。

8.1 就时论时

就时论时是指事物存在或发生时: (1) 就YC而言; (2) 接近或快到YC。

1) For在空间关系中用于目的地, 即意图中的到达点, 在这里它的用法也类似, 即

for YC → $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{就YC而言} \\ \text{向往或快到YC} \end{array} \right.$ (YC6)

例组 8-1

1. She looks young for her age.
2. It is very warm for October.
3. It costs too much to send men to the moon for the present.
4. We have to wait here for the time being, and find somewhere to stay for the night.
5. It is getting on for two o'clock.
6. The meeting is arranged for two o'clock.
7. In this case it is necessary to cancel the meeting.

2. He is verging toward eighty.
3. It was getting toward closing time.
4. Toward the end of the class we had dictation.
5. It is near eight o'clock.
6. The sun was near setting as we reached home.
7. The time draws near the National Holiday.
8. The shops were crowded, for it was near New Year.

译文 8-2

1. 他们是傍晚到达的。
2. 他快到八十岁了。
3. 那时正快要上店门休息了。
4. 上课快要结束时我们进行了默写。
5. 现在靠近八点钟。
6. 我们到家时太阳快要落山。
7. 日子逐渐接近国庆节了。
8. 由于那时快到新年，各店铺都拥挤得很。

在例组8-2中，前面四句toward YC在时间上的方向性十分明确；后四句nearYC则说明接近或靠近。

8.2 顺时逆流

这是指事物存在或发生的时间与YC有差距，不是不到，就是过了YC。

1) off 用于空间时为“从XC离去”，用于时间为“距YC”，但相当于befor而不是after，即

off YC → 不到或差YC (YC13)

例组 8-3

1. It is a few minutes off six o'clock.
2. She is two days off one year old.
3. It is not far off twelve o'clock.

译文 8-3

1. 现在是六点差几分钟。
2. 她周岁还差两天。
3. 现在快到十二点了。

2) Out of同在空间关系时表达事物是从XC为出发点而离去, 在时间上离去意味着“不及时”或“过时”, 即
out of YC→过YC (YC14)

例组 8-4

1. This time-table is out of date.
2. Oysters are out of season from May to August.
3. This railway station is out of use.
4. That kind of dress is now out of fashion.

译文 8-4

1. 这一时刻表已经过时。
2. 牡蛎从五月到八月是淡季。
3. 这一火车站已废旧不用。
4. 那种衣服现已不时髦。

3) of在时间上的用法比较杂, 往往可以用其它介词代

替（见下面例组8-11），但一般都可以归纳为“到YC”，尤其是在汉译意义中。

of YC → 到YC (YC15)

当然，在译文中我们则采用习惯用语

例组 8-5

1. It is five minutes of(to) nine.
2. His son is not yet of (up to) age.
3. What do you do of an evening (in the evenings)?
4. We usually go shopping of a Monday (on Mondays).
5. He died within a few days of his ninetieth birth day.

译文 8-5

1. 现在是九点差五分（还有五分钟到九点）
2. 他的儿子还未成年（还没有到成人年龄）
3. 你每天晚上做些什么？（一到晚上做些什么？）
4. 我们通常逢星期一出去采购。（每到星期一…）
5. 他在快到九十岁生日的那几天内死去。

在例组8-5中：

例句1是美国英语的表达法，意指‘距九点还有五分钟’；英国英语用to，意为‘到九点还有五分钟’；两者都说明‘九点差五分’。

例句2则可以是‘没有到达成人年龄’。

例句3和4中的‘of YC’都相当于‘在YA’，但由于YA是复数，就成为虚指，在汉译中为‘每，到或逢YC’。

例句 5 的 ' ofYC' 则明显地含有 '快到 或 接近' YC 的意义。

此外, 所有这些例句的 of 词组都不是名词修饰语。

练习 8-1

在下列各句中填入依据和过往时间各介词, 亦即 for, toward, near, off, out of, of, 并逐句汉译。

1. Some people never have a thought...tomorrow.
2. It is getting...bed time.
3. Peaches are expensive...winter, because they are
...season.
4. He asked my family down...the week end.
5. It must be getting...dinner time.
6. I hope to arrive...six o'clock.
7. It is too cold...the winter.
8. That old man is two years...eighty.
9. It is...midnight.
10. We must have our fuel stored up...the winter.

8.3 开始时间

1) From 用于开始时间时, 象它用于空间的出发点“从 XC 来”一样, 表达事物的存在或发生是从何时开始的, 即

from YC → 从 YC 起 (YC11)

我们看到 from 的汉译也是“从”, YC 可以是过去, 现在或将来时间。

例组 8-6

1. He resolved to do his best from that day on.
2. From the moment of coming here he complained of everything.
3. He liked the plan from the very beginning.
4. It dates from the fifteenth century.
5. She begins school from today.
6. The store is open from eight every morning.
7. I have known her from a child.
8. I have adopted that method from the start.
9. The new library will open from September first.
10. From Monday next railway fares will be increased by 10%.

译文 8-6

1. 他下了决心要从那天起尽他的力去做。
2. 从到达这里开始他就抱怨一切。
3. 他从一开始就喜欢那计划。
4. 这要从十五世纪算起。
5. 她从今天起开始上学。
6. 那店铺是每天早晨从八点开始对外营业。
7. 从童年时起我已经认识她了。
8. 我一开始就已经采用了那个方法。
9. 那新的图书馆将从九月一日起开放。
10. 从下个星期一起铁路运费将提高一成。

在例组8-6中我们可以指出：

例句1~3的事物都发生在过去，开始时间也在过去；

例句4的事物发生在现在，开始时间则追溯到遥远的过去；

例句5是现在发生现在开始的事；

例句6是以现在时态表达的日常工作，开始时间也属于例行公事；

例句7和8中事物发生已延续到现在，开始时间当然在过去；

例句9和10中事物的发生在将来，开始时间也都在将来。

2) Since是一个专用于时间的并且也是表达起始时间的介词。它与from不同之处在于时间的起点总在过去，即

since YC→自从YC以来 (YC12)

事物的存在或发生可以延续到过去，现在，或将来，因之主句的时态一般都用完成式，除非所叙述的是事实或真理。

例组 8-7

1. The baby had been ill since birth and died at the age of three.
2. He has been away from home since the end of last year.
3. Since last seeing you I have been very busy.
4. We have lived here since 1951.
5. I haven't seen her since yesterday.
6. Man has been tempted since the beginning of time.
7. It is exactly three weeks today since New Year

Day.

8. The trains run more frequently since the introduction of the time-table.
9. It is thirty years since his departure.
10. Next year it will be ten years since our moving here.

译文 8-7

1. 那婴儿自从出生后一直有病而在三岁那年夭折。
2. 自从去年年底以来他一直不在家。
3. 自从上次见到你以来我一直很忙。
4. 自从1951年以来我们就一直住在这里。
5. 自从昨天开始我一直没有看到她过。
6. 人类自从创世以来就被引入了犯罪之路。
7. 从元旦那天开始到今天恰好是三个星期。
8. 自从采用新的时刻表以来列车来往更频繁了。
9. 自从他离开后到现在整整三十年。
10. 自从我们搬来这里后到明年将是十个年头。

在例组8-7中时间的起点都在过去，其中

例句1~6都用的完成式；

例句7~9都讲的是眼前事实，用简单现在时态；

例句10指出了未来的事实，用简单将来时态。

8.4 终止时间

1) Till和until是两个专用于时间的同意介词，用来表达事物的存在或发生是从已往某个时间直到它们所指的终止时间。

till or until YC → 直到YC为止 (YC17)

这两个词的选用，通常主要用till，但从声音上讲句首常用until，否定句中也经常用until；此外，为了突出否定语气，我们有时会遇到not until YC这种构造，不论这种或那种否定语构造，汉译时可以视情况作适当修改，如

until YC } → 在YC以前不... } (YB11)
not until YC } → 到YC才... }

(参阅例组7-2, 例句5.)

例组 8-8

1. I will keep it till Monday.
2. The coupon is good till the end of the year.
3. We'll wait until after she arrives so we can all go together.
4. She said she couldn't leave until after the meeting was over.
5. The reaction did not start until the next morning.
6. Men did not begin to write until 7 or 8 thousand years ago.
7. Until now I knew nothing about it.
8. Until then I had known nothing about it.
9. Not until 1961 did chemists succeed in obtaining this compound.
10. Not until the last minute they won't give up the defence.

例组 8-8

1. 我要保留它一直到星期一为止。
2. 那购货券一直到年终都是有效的。
3. 我们要一直等到她来以后以便我们可以统统一一起去。
4. 她说在会议开完以前她是无法离开的。
5. 直到第二天早晨那反应才开始。
6. 到七、八千年以前人还没有开始写字。
7. 直到现在我对它还一无所知。
8. 在那时以前我对它一无所知。
9. 在1961年以前化学家还没有在制成那化合物方面取得成功。(即“到1961...才成功”)
10. 不到最后一分钟他们是不会放弃抵抗的。

在例组8-8中:

例句1~3都不是否定句, till也不在句首, 通常用till, 不过until也可用如例句3;

例句4~6都是否定句而都用 until, 例句4强调会没有开完不能离开, 例句6也是突出“没有开始写字”, 而例句5是要说明反应开始的时间, 而另一种译法“在YC以前(不)”, 除了要说明反应之慢外, 与反应开始时间无甚关系;

例句7~10都是until在句首, 同时又都是否定句, 其中例句10可以是类似“不到黄河心不死”, “不到长城非好汉”等那种双否定句; 例句7显然现在以前和现在都是否定; 例句8含有“到那时”才肯定”的意思, 例句9也是这样; 例句10的双否定句, 它的译法与肯定句一样, 但含意并不尽是相同, 要看情况而定。

2) Up to也是用来表达事物存在或发生的终了时间,

更精确地说是时限。它基本上都用于过去的时限以及瞬间已成过去的now, the present,但无法用于未卜先知的未来。

up to YC→直到YC(为止) (YC19)

例组 8-9

1. Up to hundred years ago few people needed to learn foreign language.
2. Up to the end of last week ¥3, 000 had been subscribed to the fund.
3. Up to that time, all had gone well.
4. Up to now, I have never met her.

译文 8-9

1. 追溯到一百年前几乎没有人需要学习外语。
2. 到上星期末为止已经给那基金募得三千元。
3. 直到那时, 一切进行顺利。
4. 直到现在, 我还从没有遇见过她。

可以看出, 我们无法说“直到下星期(或明年等), 一切顺利。”

3) Into用于空间时意为“进入XC”, 用于时间时也是一样:

into YC→进入到YC (YC18)

例组 8-10

1. They sat talking far into the night.
2. It lasted well into this century.
3. We are eight minutes into the second half.

4. Its very slowly changing surface makes the moon a window into the very distant past.

译文 8-10

1. 他们坐着一直谈到深夜。
2. 那事情已持续到深入这一世纪。
3. 我们进入下半场已有八分钟了。
4. 月球表面极其缓慢的变化使它成为可以深入遥远古代的观察窗口。

8.5 从开始到终止

在日常生活中我们常需要说明事物的存在或发生开始于何时以及何时终止。为此，我们用下列成对介词来表达。

from YC_1 till YC_2 → 从 YC_1 到 YC_2 (YC26)

from YC_1 to YC_2 → 从 YC_1 到 YC_2 (YC27)

from YC_1 through YC_2 → 从 YC_1 过完 YC_2 (YC28)

其中till和to可以通用，它们对于到达的时间比较笼统，可以是部分或全部，有时甚至在这时间以前；美国英语常用through YC_2 ，意指不仅到达而且包括 YC_2 。此外，to和through都不能离开from而单独用于时间终点。

例组 8-11

1. Ideas can come from the past to the present.
2. I usually take a walk from 6 to 7 every morning.
3. They work from morning till night.
4. We camped there from July to(till) September.

5. We stayed there from July through September.
6. He attended school from January till June.
7. They visit us from time to time.
8. The boy is growing taller from day to day.

译文 8-11

1. 各种概念可以从过去传到现在。
2. 我通常每天早晨从六点到七点去散步。
3. 他们从早上一直工作到夜间。
4. 我们从七月到九月曾在那里露营。
5. 我们从七月起留在那里一直过完九月。
6. 他从一月到六月上了学。
7. 他们不时来看望我们。
8. 那孩子正一天天地在长高。

在例组8-11中,

例句 1 和 2 的意思既不必要“为止”，也无须“过了”，所以用to表达“到”的时间已很清楚。

例句 3 中的till常有“到某时为止”的含意，这里用to也可以，不过只说明一种工作方式。

比较例句 4 与例句 5，to或till September指九月中任一天都可以终了，而through September是包括九月分全部。

例句 6 中上学日期有规定，用till已足以使人理解。

例句 7 和 8 中from time to time和from day to day都是习惯用语，相当于我们的“时时”和“天天”。

练习 8-2

择优填入开始和终止时间的介词以及其它介词(如有),
并汉译下列各句。

1. Many of them will stay...1997.
2. I like the plan...the first.
3. He has been at work...early morning.
4. He works very hard...morning...night.
5. He slept far...the daylight.
6. We have made great achievement...liberation.
7. He was fond of reading...childhood.
8. ...Saturdays the shop keep open...8 p.m.
9. She has been home...her marriage.
10. He wont be home...this evening.
11. He begins learning Latin...the age of ten.
12. They were here...two o'clock...five.
13. I shall wait...tomorrow.
14. His thought runs far ahead...the time of realization of a modernized China.
15. We did not noticed the matter...yesterday.
16. ...the break of the war I lived...Beijing.
17. He promised that...then on he would do his work ...time.
18. The exhibition will be opn...May 10th...June 6th.
19. ...my arrival I have heard nothing from him.
20. I usually go to my study...supper and write ...midnight.

第九章 经历时间

经历时间是指事物存在或发生所经过的时间，它可以是象时限那样的一个点，也可以是一个或长或短的段落，或者是一个指定的期间。

9.1 时 限

1) past是简单的经过，而

past YD → 过YD

(YD)

例组 9-1

1. He is past middle age.
2. He is past seventy.
3. It was past noon when we arrived home.
4. It was half past nine when he once more entered the laboratory.

译文 9-1

1. 他已人过中年。
2. 他已年逾古稀。
3. 我们回到家时已过中午了。
4. 当他再次走进实验室时已是九点半了。

从例组9-1并比较例组7-1，在年龄问题上over与past是可以通用的，over的用法述于下一节。

2) Beyond也是“过”，但含有时限的意义较浓，所以又可作“迟于”解，不过“迟于”也就是“过”（参看5.1节用于空间的beyond）。

beyond YD→过YD (YD2)

past可以常用来代替beyond，反之则不尽然，这也是由于时限关系。

例组 9-2

1. He went to his office beyond the usual hour.
2. They stayed beyond the time limit.
3. Don't stay out beyond (after) mid-night.
4. Some people who wish to learn English are beyond the age for schooling.

译文 9-2

1. 他过了往常时间才去办公室。
2. 他们过了规定时间还留在那里。
3. 不要过了半夜还呆在外边。
4. 有些想学习英语的人都过了入学年龄。

在例组9-2中，例句1和3的往常时间和半夜都可以认为时限意义不强，都可以用pass代替，例句2和4中都是时限，用beyond强调一下。

9.2 段落时间

这是指事物的存在或发生是经过或贯穿一段时间。

- 1) Over用于空间XD时意为‘越过’，在这里为

over YD→度过YD (YD4)

当然，译文中依全句意义有一定的灵活性。

例组 9-3

1. We have lived in Beijing over thirty years.
2. Over the years he's become more and more thrift.
3. These apples will keep over the winter.
4. That patient won't live over today.
5. We can discuss the matter over dinner.
6. The girls were chatting over their needle-work.
7. We settled the deal over a cup of tea.

译文 9-3

1. 我们住在北京已超过三十年了。
2. 经过了那些年月他变得越来越节约了。
3. 这些苹果可以贮藏过冬。
4. 那病人已不能维持过今天了。
5. 我们可以边吃饭边讨论那问题。
6. 那些姑娘一边做针线活一边聊天。
7. 我们经过一杯茶的功夫谈妥了那交易。

2) Through用于空间XD是“通过或穿过XD”，在这里也有类似的含意，即

through YD→通过YD (YD12)

3) Throughout与through可以通用，它的语气更强些，表示通个整整一段时间，即

throughout YD→贯穿YD (YD11)

我们还可以在through前加all来加强语气，这对于别的几个

介词也是一样，如例组5.10中例句11和13的all over。

例组 9-4

1. I shall stay through the summer season.
2. You should know something when you get through the course.
3. The children are too young to sit through a long lecture.
4. Through about two billion years, the development of plants and animals on our earth have been going on.
5. All through a man's life—from birth to death—he must be supplied with energy.
6. We worked hard through(out) the summer.
7. I have never heard of it through (out) my life.
8. It poured with rain throughout the night.
9. Throughout his life, the doctor always tried to help others.
10. He slept throughout the history class.

译文 9-4

1. 我将留此过了夏季。
2. 当你学过（完）那课程后你该懂得一些东西了。
3. 孩子们实在年龄太小去听完长长一堂课。
4. 贯穿大约二十亿年的漫长历史，我们地球上各种植物和动物的进化一直在进行。
5. 贯穿人的整个一生——从出生到死亡——他必须随时得

到能量的供应。

6. 我们努力工作了(整整)一个夏季。
7. 在我(整个)一生中我们还没有听到它过。
8. 通宵达旦(天)下了倾盆大雨。
9. 贯穿他的一生, 那医生总是尽力帮助别人。
10. 他睡了整整一堂历史课。

在例组9-4中:

例句2和3的“学完…”和“听完…”也都是“过”的意思, through的这一含意是经常会遇到的。

例句6和7的“整个”可用可不用, 也就是说through和throughout都可用, 汉译也随之改变, 但两种说法在意义上没有多大差别。

例句8~10的各种事物都有强调的必要, 所以都用throughout.

4) Round用于空间XD时是“绕过XD”, 时间是不能象那样“绕过”的, 只能是

round YD→经过整个YD (YD23)

在例组9-5中可以看到各round YD都属于惯用介词词组, 仍含有“绕一圈”的意思。

例组 9-5

1. The doctors worked round the clock to stem the epidemic.
2. She has been writing letters round the day.
3. The mountain is so high that the snow does not melt on it all round the year.

译文 9-5

1. 医生们整日整夜工作以制止传染病的蔓延。
2. 她整整一天一直在写信。
3. 那座山高得使它上面的雪终年不化。
- 5) For在这里相当于用在空间XD时表示路程或距离。

即

for YD→有YD之久 (YD6)

例组 9-6

1. Man has known about magnet for thousands of years.
2. He will be a cripple for life.
3. I shall be here for another two weeks.
4. You have been unconscious for a day or two.
5. For the next hour she taught him how to speak English.
6. He listened for several seconds.
7. I have wanted to go to China for a long time.
8. He will not be well for some time yet.

译文 9-6

1. 人类认识磁铁已有几千年之久了。
2. 他将终生成为一个残废人。
3. 我在这里将再有两个星期。
4. 你曾经有一两天不省人事。
5. 之后有个把小时她教了他怎样说英语。
6. 他静听了几秒钟。

7. 我想去中国已为时很久了。

8. 他还将有个时期不会康复。

6) In在这里表明事物的发生是紧接在一段时间之后, 而不是一般地在它之后, 所以

in YD → (再) 过 YD (YD3)

例组 9-7

1. I will be back in a short time.

2. He should be here in a few days.

3. Will you come to see me in half an hour?

5. He will begin learning another language in two years.

译文 9-7

1. 过一会我就回来。

2. 再过几天他该到这里了。

3. 再过半个小时你来看我好吗?

4. 再过两年他将开始学习另一门语言。

9.3 期间

期间是指事物的存在或发生是在一个时期之内, 时期可长可短, 事物的发生可以是连续的, 间隔的, 或一次性的。

1) During是个专用于期间的介词

during YD → 在YD期间内 (YD13)

例组 9-8

1. During the first of his life, Watt studied weather

and storm.

2. He lived on an island during his youth.
3. The price of fish is low during the fishing season.
4. They grow during the day and they grow all night.
5. The noise continued repeatedly during the night.
6. She was usually cheerful during those trouble time.
7. Einstien's Law of Gravitation was tested during an eclipse of the sun.
8. There was a lot of noise during the performance.
9. They lost everything during the depression.
10. He is taking my place during my absence.

译文 9-8

1. 在他一生的初期，瓦特研究了气象和风暴。
2. 在他青年时期他生活在一个岛上。
3. 鱼价在鱼汛期间是较低的。
4. 他们整天生长并且也通夜生长。
5. 那声音在夜间断断续续没有停过。
6. 在那些困难期间她通常是心情开朗的。
7. 爱因斯坦的引力定律在一次日蚀期间得到了检验。
8. 在那演出当中有许许多多吵闹声。
9. 他们在不景气期间损失了一切。
10. 在我不在期间他将代替我的职务。

2) Pending也是一个专用于期间的介词，它可以有两种意义：

pending YD → { 在YD期间(内) (YD14)
在YD以前的期间

例组 9-9

1. This matter must wait pending his return.
2. Pending the trial, he was kept in prison.
3. The suspect was held pending investigation of the charge.
4. Pending the marathon negotiation, the two superpowers have ever been racing to increase their nuclear weapons.

译文 9-9

1. 在他回来前的期间事情必须暂搁一下。
2. 在审判前的期间内, 他被扣押在监狱里。
3. 在案件的调查期间那嫌疑犯受到拘留。
4. 在马拉松式的谈判期间, 两个超级大国一直在竞相增加各自的核武器。

3) By也用于期间, 但一般只限于白天(day)和黑夜(night), 有时可与during通用。

by YD → 在YD(期间) (YD17)

例组 9-10

1. Do you prefer travelling by day or by night?
2. Some birds fly only by night.
3. It is no use to escape by daylight.
4. Men usually work by day and rest by night.

5. What is done by night appears by day.

译文 9-10

1. 你喜欢在白天还是在夜间旅行?
2. 有些鸟类只在夜间飞行。
3. 要想在白天逃走是不行的。
4. 人们通常(在)白天工作而(在)夜间休息。
5. 在暗中做的事情在光天化日下暴露无遗。

(欲使人不知, 切非已莫为)。

4) With表明事物是伴随着时代, 季节等而存在或发生的, 即

with YD→随着 YD (YD20)

例组 9-11

1. With the approach of sunset it becomes chilly.
2. The swallows come with the spring.
3. Our dresses change with seasons.
4. A man grows wiser with age.
5. We must keep in step with the time.

译文 9-11

1. 气温随着太阳渐渐下沉而变得寒冷。
2. 燕子随着春天一起到来。
3. 我们的衣服随季节而更换。
4. 一个人随年龄增长而变得更聪明。
5. 我们必须随着时代保持前进。

练习 9-1

择优填入用于时间的介词，主要是这一章的，并汉译下列各句：

1. Everybody has had many experiences...his life-time.
2. We have been waiting here...an hour and half.
3. As we journey...life we learn many things.
4. We camped there...the vacation.
5. She will meet us...two hours.
6. It happened...the Long March.
7. Even though he may be gone...some time I'll wait...he comes.
8. Some animals sleep...the cold winter weather.
9. They went to China...the holiday.
10. Are you staying...night?
11. We know the customs vary...the time.
12. It happened twice...a month.
13. The coupon is good...five years.
14. Our roof blew off...the storm.
15. He fell asleep...a book.
16. He went to sleep...the meeting.
17. He said he would come again...a few days.
18. The noise has gone on...too long.
19. Rain fell...the game.
20. He won't live over the night.
21. The show should start...about an hour.

22. We start to work...the rise of the sun, and go to rest...its set.

9.4 介词用于时间的小结

用于时间的介词，按照它们的用法以及介词词组的译意，可以把它们小结如下：

表达简单时间YA的有：at, on, (upon在这里也极少用) 和in。总的译意是“在YA”

表达相对时间YB的有：above, below, over, under, before, after, behind, by, between, within, inside, about, around。它们的概括译意是“在YB的一方”，其中“一方”包括“先后迟早，之间，以内，大约”。

表达起迄时间YC的有：for, toward(s), off, out of, from, since, till, until, up to以及起迄时间联用的from YB till YB, from YB to YB, from YB through YB；它们的译意可以概括为“从，到，向YB”

表达经历时间YC的有：past, beyond, over, through, throughout, round, for, in, during, pending, by, with。它们的译意可以概括为“过，贯穿，在一期间。”

我们可以注意到介词用于时间与用于空间的相似性，此外，介词用于时间时可以略去，这与汉译也类似。

部分三 介词用于人世间

介词用于人世间是指，除了空间和时间关系外，事物的存在或发生与其它天地万象间各种各样的关系。早在概论中指出这类关系多得分不胜分而不如不分，人世间是它们的一个总称。这不是说我们把它们杂乱无章混在一起，它们还是可以辨别认识的。另一方面，在这一关系中我们可以把各介词在空间和时间关系中用法上划分加以引用，以达到介词在三种关系中的统一划分。因而在人世间关系中我们有：

- ZA 状态处境，相当于地点和简单时间；
- ZB 优选对比，相当于位置和相对时间；
- ZC 来龙去脉，相当于方向和起迄时间；
- ZD 途径工具，相当于路径区域和经历时间。

第十章 状态处境

状态处境是事物存在或发生时所具有的各种状态或遭遇到的各种处境。它们包括的范围很广，概括起来可以有从抽象的到具体的下面各种：心理状态，品性质量，状态秩序，外表形色，职务行业，具体环境，活动领域，活动表现，活动过程等。这一用法的介词主要有at, on, in三个，分述于

后。

10.1 即时景象

与at用于空间XA的一个点相似，它在这一用法ZA中的特点是它所联系的状态处境具有下面的情况——即时即景，顶峰极限，虚指泛指，以及度数，速率和单价等。它的介词词组虽然可以概括为：

at ZA → 处于ZA (ZA1)

由于这种介词词组大多是习惯用语，汉译中也常有旗鼓相当的习惯用语，只隐含“处于”而已。英语中这类习惯用语很多并都可在词典中查到，本书中不再一一列出。

例组 10-1

1. I felt myself at home.
2. You are quite at liberty to go where you please.
3. I never feel at ease in his company.
4. We were at a loss to explain the occurrence.
5. Art was then at its best.
6. The storm was at its worst this morning.
7. The party was at its height when we arrived.
8. The work in the factory is at standstill.
9. They were at table(dinner)when we called.
10. Most of the children were at play, but some were still at their lesson in the evening.
11. The two nations were at war last year and now are at peace.

12. The pens are sold at five dollars each.
13. we sell goods at fixed prices.
14. The thermometer stood at 80°C.
15. The two metals combined at high temperature.
16. The car went at a speed of 100 kilometers an hour.
17. The motor is designed to run at constant speed.
18. He rode away at full gallop.
19. He finished reading the book at one sitting.
20. Can you work for six hours at a stretch?

译文 10-1

1. 我感到（象在自己家里一样）毫无拘束。
2. 你完全有权想去那里就去那里。
3. 有他在一起我绝不会感到安心自在。
4. 为了解释那件事的发生我们一时不知从何说起。
5. 艺术在那时正处于全盛状态。
6. 那风暴在今天早晨达到了顶峰。
7. 我们到达时那联欢会正处在它的高潮。
8. 那厂里的工作正处于停顿状态。
9. 我们来访时他们正在吃饭。
10. 在晚间大多数儿童都在游玩，而有几个仍在做他们的功课。
11. 这两个国家去年在交战而现在处于和平状态。
12. 那种笔以每支五元出售。

13. 我们按定价出售货物。
14. 那温度计停留在80摄氏度。
15. 那两种金属在高温下结合了。
16. 那辆车子是以每小时100公里的速度开过去了。
17. 那发动机是按等速度运转而予以设计的。
18. 他踏上车以全速疾驰而去。
19. 他一口气读完了这本书。
20. 你能否接连不断地工作六个小时？

在例组10-1中：

例句1~4都属于心理活动状态，就字面讲它们也都可以理解的。如例句1 at home是在家，但感到在家显然并不在家而只能是象在家一样，由此引伸这里at home原意是：“随随便便”，毫无拘束，也就是我们习惯上所说的“不客气”。

例句5~8则都属于顶峰状态；例句9~11都是些临时活动；

例句12~18是分别表明了事物的单价，定价，温度和速度等，有的是属于状态，另一些为方式或姿态，不难辨别。

例句19和20的at one sitting和at a stretch是习惯用语好象我们用的“一气呵成”，“一蹴而就”等，分别说明方式和姿态。

10.2 面临场合

介词on或upon用于状态处境时表明事物的存在或发生是面临或接触到心情上，思想品质上，方法上，活动上等，但不涉及它们的内容和过程。

on ZA → 在ZA上 (ZA2)

此外，介词词组on ZA大多数是习惯用词组，英译汉时有词典可查，习惯用词组非一朝一夕所能掌握。例句只能供学习参考。

例组 10-2

1. We were all on edge to know the news.
2. They got married on the quiet.
3. The boy smoked on the sly.
4. He has nothing but money on his mind.
5. This is a stain on his reputation.
6. He prides himself upon (on)his knowledge.
7. They cast an imputation on her character.
8. How many of the boys are on the team?
9. She has been on the committee for two years.
10. He is on the staff of the university.
11. He is at home on leave.
12. We are not allowed to smoke on duty.
13. The doctor says that Ali is definitely on the mend.
14. The population is on the decrease.
15. The building is on fire.
16. The murder is now on trial.
17. That factory has been on trial.
18. New cars of various types are on show.
19. The latest styles in summer dresses are now on view.
20. He is on a voyage round the world.

译文 10-2

1. 我们都迫切地想知道那消息。
2. 他们悄悄地结了婚。
3. 那孩子偷偷地抽了烟。
4. 他思想上除了钱外没有别的
5. 这是他声望上的一个污点。
6. 他在他的知识上感到自负。
7. 他们在她的品德上提出了非难。
8. 那些小伙子中有几个人是队员?
9. 她当上那个会的委员已经两年了。
10. 他是那大学里教职工委员的一个成员。
11. 他请假在家。
12. 我们不得在上班时抽烟。
13. 那医生说阿丽肯定正在逐渐康复。
14. 人口正在下降。
15. 那大楼着火了。
16. 那谋杀案正在审讯。
17. 那工厂已经在试车了。
18. 各种式样的新车子正在展出。
19. 最新式的夏装都在陈列展览。
20. 他是在环绕地球的航程上。

在例组 10-2中:

例句1~3是人在活动时的精神状态和方式, 介词词组都是习惯用语而易于理解的, 如例句1的on the edge是在边缘上, 意即“迫在眉睫”, 这种习惯搭配都可在词典中找到。

例句4~7是指事物存在或发生与品德上的关系。

例句8~10是特殊用法,说明人是某一团体的成员而有别于职业。

例句11~19指事物正处于各种活动,但还没有深入到活动的过程。当然,各介词词组又属于习惯搭配。

例句20可以理解为(1)在具体旅途上,那便是空间的XA,和(2)抽象地指出他的处境,所以这是个跨空间的Z。

10.3 内涵情况

In是在这一用法中用得最多的一个介词,用的面又十分广泛,可以说通过它我们可以了解这一用法的全貌。总起来说,与它用于空间XA的特点——面积和体积相似,它的介词词组可以概括为:

in ZA → 在ZA中/方面 (ZA3)

例组 10-3 心理状态

1. She went home in high spirits.
2. He spoke in all sincerity.
3. He is in doubt about the outcome.
4. Friendship is rooted in mutual trust.
5. He was immersed in pleasure.
6. The crowd shouted in angry.
7. He was lost in admiration of the scenery.
8. The next day she began to work in earnest.
9. Why are you in such hurry.?
10. He participated in the search in a somewhat absent fashion

译文 10-3

1. 她在兴高采烈中回家去了。 (兴高采烈地)
2. 他在极其诚恳中讲了话。 (极其诚恳地)
3. 他对后果是在怀疑中。 (抱怀疑态度)
4. 友谊扎根在相互信任之中。
5. 他沉浸在欢乐之中。
6. 人群在愤怒中大声叫喊。
7. 他在那景色的欣赏中出了神。
8. 第二天她即开始认真地工作。
9. 你为什么这样急急忙忙?
10. 他漫不经心地参与了那搜查。

在这例组中心理状态是指情绪或内心活动的表现；介词词组作为状态语时可以汉译为ZA地。

例组 10-4 外表形色

1. Plastics are manufactured in a variety of forms.
2. Will you have money in gold or paper?
3. Smoke was passing out in a cloud.
4. This is a picture in two parts.
5. They entered the hall in a single file.
6. Children are sitting in rows.
7. He threw his clothes down in a heap.
8. The boy in uniform is my brother.
9. The child is dressed in rags.
10. She is very becoming in blue.

译文 10-4

1. 塑料品可以制成多种多样的形状。
2. 你取的钱是要硬通货还是要纸币？
3. 烟尘在腾云架雾地冒出来。
4. 这是一部分成两集影片。
5. 他们排成单行进入了大厅。
6. 儿童们成排地坐着。
7. 他把衣服丢下成一堆。
8. 那个穿着制服的小伙子是我的兄弟。
9. 那儿童穿得衣衫褴褛。
10. 她穿着兰色衣服是十分相称的。

在这例组中in的用法接近into (见ZC), 汉译“成为”
例句8~10表示穿着, 则是英语的习惯用法。

例组10-5 各种状况

1. The fruits are in good condition.
2. Everything is in order for the experiment.
3. The house is in a good state of repair.
4. He has not been in good health for some years.
5. The boy is retarded in his growth.
6. An improvement in the results was soon noted.
7. The employees shared in profit.
8. He seems to have lost zest in reading.
9. Umbrellas are in great demand on rain.

days.

10. He is a king in name, but not in fact.

译文 10-5

1. 那些水果都处于良好状况（中）。
2. 一切都已处于准备实验的正常安排（中）。
3. 那屋子处于良好的维修状况（中）。
4. 他健康状况欠佳已经有些年头了。
5. 那小孩在他的发育上有所减慢。
6. 在各结果上的改进很快受到了注意。
7. 那些雇员在利润上共同分享。
8. 他似乎在阅读上已经失去了热情。
9. 雨伞在下雨天有很大的需求量。
10. 他在名义上是个国王，而事实上则不是。

在这例组中例句1~4指人物是否处于正常状况，汉译时“中”都可略去；例句5~10指状况发生或存在的各种方面。

例组10-6 外界环境

1. I am unable to work in the heat.
2. They marched miles in thunderstorm.
3. I like to walk in the rain.
4. The room was in complete darkness.
5. If you go that way, you'll find yourself in difficulties.
6. We must keep our patience even in extreme adversity.
7. The adventure ended in disaster.

8. He died in poverty.
9. He ended his day in peace.
10. We rejoiced in our fresh victories.

译文 10-6

1. 我无法在炎热中工作。
2. 他们在狂风暴雨中行进了好几里。
3. 我喜欢在雨中散步。
4. 那房间是在完全黑暗之中。
5. 你要是那样下去，你会把自己置于困难之中。
6. 即使在极端患难之中，我们也必须保持忍耐。
7. 那冒险活动在灾难中结束。
8. 他在贫困中死去。
9. 他在安静中结束了他的生命。
10. 我们在新的胜利中欢欣鼓舞。

在这例组中事物存在或发生的各种环境都是比空较明确的。

例组10-7 专业领域

1. The girl is an amateur in art.
2. He has attained eminence in literature.
3. She is interested in many branches of science.
4. Our workers has made many innovations in industry.
5. They are partners in trade.
6. He is an experienced teacher in English.
7. The young doctor's experience in surgery is

limited.

8. He takes delight in painting.
9. His father is in politics.
10. His brother is in plastics.

译文 10-7

1. 那姑娘在艺术方面是个业余爱好者。
2. 他已经在文学方面获得了声望。
3. 她在科学的许多部门中都感到兴趣。
4. 我们的工人在工业方面已作出了许多改进。
5. 他们在商业上是合伙人。
6. 他在英语方面是个有经验的教师。
7. 那年轻医师在外科方面的经验是有限的。
8. 他在油画方面有爱好。
9. 他的父亲是搞政治的。
10. 他的哥哥是做塑料品的买卖的。

在这例组中例句1~8的各专业领域都是清楚的；例句9和10则是指行业，是英语中的习惯用法。

例组 10-8 活动方式

1. It is not to be said in public.
2. The enemy appeared in strength.
3. They resigned in a body.
4. He lifted each boy in turn.
5. He sent us a message in code.
6. He asked it almost in a whisper.
7. He draws his breath in great gasps.

8. He told me the news in great detail.
9. I can tell that in one word.
10. Fear was evident in all his words.

译文 10-8

1. 这不是在大庭广众之中可说的。
2. 敌人以强大的力量出现了。
3. 他们**集体**辞职了。
4. 他把每个孩子**轮流**举了起来。
5. 他以密码把信息传给我们。
6. 他几乎以细声耳语提到它。
7. 他大口气大口气地喘着。
8. 他把消息**详详细细**告诉了我。
9. 我能够以一句话把那事讲了。
10. 恐惧在他一言一语中是明显的。

在这例组中注意活动方式大多是作为状语并有不同的汉译来表达，例句10，象例句9一样，介词宾语同是“言语”，但它并不表达方式，列入以资比较。

例组10-9 活动过程

1. I find some difficulties in learning English.
2. I felt some troubles in coming to the point.
3. He was fined for his neglect in returning the book in due time.
4. I was impressed by his zest in pursuit of truth.
5. Natural science is one of man's weapons in the

fight of freedom.

6. In energy transformation, there is some loss, but no energy is destroyed.
7. Our letters probably crossed in the mail.
8. Our team won in the final.
9. The children took delight in games.
10. A good worker is absorbed in his work.

译文 10-9

1. 我在学习英语上觉得有些困难。
2. 我在提到那问题上感到有些麻烦。
3. 他由于在到期还书上的疏忽而受到罚款。
4. 我被他在真理探索中的高度热忱而深受感动。
5. 自然科学是人类为自由而斗争中的一种武器。
6. 在能量转换中, 有些损耗, 但没有一点能量被消灭。
7. 我们的信件也许在邮递中错过了。
8. 我们的球队在决赛中胜利了。
9. 儿童们在游戏中取乐。
10. 一个优秀的工人全神贯注在他工作上。
在这例组中各例句分别表达了不同的活动过程。

例组 10-10 意识方面

1. She persisted in her opinion.
2. We differ in our policy.
3. They persevered in their plan of action.
4. He should be encouraged in his ambitions.
5. The teacher failed in his duty of educating the

young.

6. I am keeping your request in my mind.
7. He is a hero in the eyes of his friend.
8. He is very precipitate in his action.
9. It is in my power to do that.
10. The bus is not yet in sight.

译文 10-10

1. 她在她的想法上固执不化。(她固执已见)
2. 我们在我们的政策上有分歧。
3. 他们在他们的行动计划上坚持不变。
4. 他在他的抱负上应得到鼓励。
5. 那老师没有在他教育年轻一代的责任上尽责。
6. 我把你的要求牢牢记在我的心中。
7. 他在他的朋友心目中是个英雄。
8. 他在他的行动上是十分鲁莽的。
9. 做那件事是在我的权力之内。
10. 那公共汽车还没有在视线之内(还看不到)。

在这例组中大多属于意识方面，内容较为复杂，例句9和10具有“范围”的意义。

例组 10-11 数量方面

1. They came in great numbers.
2. The two teams are equal in numbers.
3. The answers are required in round numbers.
4. They are fifteen in number.

5. we were thirty in all.
6. Not one in ten of the girls could spell well.
7. The factory showed a large increase in sales.
8. The building is forty meters in height.
9. This city has been increasing in population.
10. These books are high in price.

译文 10-11

1. 他们的人来得很多。
2. 那两个队在人数上相等。
3. 那些答案是要求以整数作出。
4. 他们总共十五个人。
5. 我们总共是三十个人。
6. 十个女孩中没有一个能够拼得良好。
7. 那工厂在销售上出现了很大的增加。
8. 那大楼在高度上有四十米。
9. 这一城市在人口方面一直在上升。
10. 那些书在价格上都是高的。

在这例组中，例句1~6都表示数量方面；例句7~10则是以数量来表达的其它方面，如高度，价格，销售量，人口等。

例组 10-12 同一人物

1. I found a good friend in Mr Young.
2. We have a warm support in Mrs Olds.
3. We have lost a first-rate teacher in Dr Lee.
4. If you ever want a friend, you shall have one

in me.

5. He has in him the making of a great man.

译文 10—12

1. 我发现一个好朋友杨先生。
2. 我们有个热心赞助人乌尔兹太太。
3. 我们失去了个第一流教师李博士。
4. 要是你想有个朋友，你可以把我算一个。
5. 它具有成为伟大人物的品质。

在这例组中，介词的宾语不是专门人名就是代名词，这是英语中的一个特殊用法。在汉语中还没有发现类似的习惯用语。

上面我们把介词in在这一用法中粗分为十个项目，其中分项的方法可不断予以改进而细分则似乎没有必要。总之，凡是式ZA3可以适用的状态处境都可用in来表达，最明显的如环境，领域，和过程等。此外，我们也可以注意到有不少属于习惯用法。

练习 10-1

择优填入at, on, 和in, 并汉译下列各句。

1. Safety...aviation has been greatly improved.
2. He must be sixty...most.
3. This statement is false...every particular.
4. Most of the people...the board were against the proposition.
5. The research...this field was resumed.
6. I was...a loss what to answer.

7. We disagree...our views.
8. He talked about the plan...length.
9. Electricity is used...cooking.
10. He was...duty all night.
11. How much time do you spend...reading?
12. I have found you...last.
13. In general, far too many people get married...
haste.
14. He struck me while I was not...my guard.
15. You must speak...loud voice.
16. You are quite...liberty to go where you please.
17. The soldiers returned...triumph.
18. The steamer is travelling...very high speed.
19. The cable is...tension.
20. She sat...ease watching TV.
21. The little girl was...tears.
22. These pictures will be...display here next week.
23. I have no experience...teaching history.
24. Please do it...your leisure.
25. The child screamd...terror.

第十一章 优选对比

优选对比是指事物存在或发生时的状态或处境是相对的，是相对于ZB而言的。

11.1 高低上下

顾名思义，高低上下是指事物的比较，这其中包括：数量，品质，身份，级别，认识，权力等。这比空间的上下位置（3.3节）只有高低之分的情况要复杂得多，这将在这一用法中各介词的例组中分别加以说明。

1) Above 概括起来说：

above ZB → 高于ZB或在ZB之上 (ZBI)

例组 11-1

1. The price is above the one I was willing to pay.
2. The temperature has been above the average recently.
3. He is above me in rank.
4. We love truth above anything else.
5. Health is above wealth.
6. This book is above me.
7. I must confess that it is above my comprehension.

8. His conduct has always been above suspicion.
9. Do you consider yourself above criticism?
10. His heroism was above all praise.
11. He is above meanness and deceit.
12. If you want learn, you must not be above asking questions.

译文 11-1

1. 那价钱已高出我心目中愿意出的价钱。
2. 最近气温已经高于逐年平均值。
3. 他在级别上是在我之上。
4. 我们热爱真理高于任何一切。
5. 健康胜于财富。
6. 这一本书已超过我的理解力。(…我难以理解)
7. 我必须承认它已超过我的理解力。
8. 他的行为总是无可怀疑。
9. 你是不是认为你自己无可批评吗?
10. 他的英雄行为是不胜赞扬的。
11. 他不屑于卑鄙和欺骗。
12. 如果你想学习, 你必须不耻下问。

在例组11-1中:

例句1~5的内容都属于客观事物, 译文中都可用“高于”或“在…之上”, 例句5“胜于”亦即“高于”。

例句6~10中above都可用beyond代替, 意即超过, 对于褒意和贬意的不同译法举例如译文。

例句11和12的内容属于行为或活动, 可以译为“不屑”而“不是不屑”可转意为“不耻”。

2) Below是above的逆义词。在数量和级别等程度方面：
below ZB→低于ZB或在ZB之下； (ZB2)
而在身份，品质，和行为等方面，则above一般含褒意，
below含贬意，在这一用法中它与下面的beneath常可通用。

3) Beneath很少用于数量方面，而在含贬意的意识方面
则与below通用。

beneath ZB→不值得ZB (ZB3)

例组 11-2

1. There is nothing here below (under) one dollar.
2. The temperature is 6°C below zero.
3. The yield was below the average.
4. He is below standard height for a soldier.
5. He is a grade below me.
6. He is below me in rank.
7. Do you know the real reason below the mass of pretexts?
8. Beneath his rough exterior is a heart of gold.
9. He is below (beneath) her in intelligence.
10. I am far beneath (below) him in fame.
11. That remark is quite below my notice.
12. His book is beneath (below) criticism.
13. His accusations are beneath (below) contempt.
14. It is beneath (below) you to say such a thing.
15. Don't associate with such people, it is beneath (below) you.

译文 11-2

1. 这里没有一项东西是在一元以下的。
2. 那气温是在零下六摄氏度。
3. 那收成是在平均以下。
4. 他够不上当兵的标准高度。
5. 他比我低一个年级。
6. 他在级别上低于我。
7. 你知道在那大量借口之下的真正理由吗?
8. 在他的粗鲁外表下是一颗高尚的心。
9. 他在智力方面不如她。
10. 在声望上我远远及不上他。
11. 那种议论完全不值得我的注意。
12. 他的书不值得批评。
13. 他的指责不足挂齿。
14. 说那样的话有失你的身份。
15. 不要同那种人交往, 这有失你的身份。

在例组11-2中:

例句1~10都符合式(ZB2), 例句9的“不如”和例句10的“及不上”只是“在…之下”的不同汉译。

例句11~15则符合式(ZB3), 其中例句14和15的“有失身份”, 含意也是“不值”。

4) Over是另一个表明数量, 程度, 和级别的介词, 即

over ZB → 在ZB以上或高于ZB (ZB4)

5) Under为over的逆义词, 即

under ZB → 在ZB以下或低于ZB (ZB5)

Above和below泛指高于和低于, 而over和under则还附带含

义或条件，它们可以彼此通用，但要注意附带含义。

例组 11-3

1. The number of students in a class should not be over(above) fifty.
2. He won't sell it under(below) ¥1,000.
3. It weighs over(above) one ton.
4. A gold dollar weighting under 28.5 grains is below standard.
5. The mountain is over 3,000 meters high.
6. The lake can not be under 3 meters deep.
7. You'll have to run faster than that, you are still over the minimum time.
8. The temperature has been few degrees under (below) the freezing point.
9. He is over me in the office.
10. A lieutenant is under a captain.
11. The educated have many advantages over the ignorant.
12. At least ten boys were under (below) Ali in the results of the tests.

译文 11-3

1. 一个班里的学生人数不应在五十以上。
2. 他不会在一千元以下把它卖掉。
3. 它重量在一吨以上。
4. 一枚金圆重在28.5厘以下时即不够标准。

5. 那座山高在三千米以上。
6. 那湖深不会在三米以下。
7. 你得比那跑得更快点，你仍超过了最小时限。
8. 那气温已经一直在冰点以下若干度。
9. 在办公室里他是我的上司。
10. 一个中尉是上尉的部下。
11. 受过教育的人有不少有利条件优于无知的人。
12. 至少有十个男孩在考试结果中不及阿里。

在例组11-3中，除了 *under* 与 *below* 可以通用的例句外，我们可以指出：

例句4中的‘标准’是个一般的泛意词，所以用 *below*，而28.5厘不仅是具体的，并且是个控制数字，所以用 *under*。象用于空间 *Xb* 一样，事物直接在 *XB* 下面，还受到 *XB* 的覆盖。

例句5~7中都用 *under* 是由于有具体的或控制的数字。

再把例句9和10与例组11-2中例句5和6作比较，它们都是表明“低于”或“高于”，但“上司”有管辖权而“部下”则受到管辖，不仅是班次或级别的高低，所以这里都用 *under* 包含了这“直接复盖”的意义。

11.2 先后次序

两方事物的存在或发生总是有先有后，这可以是主观上的选择，也可以是客观上的比较。

1) *Before* 在这一用法中属于选择，即

before ZB → 先于 ZB

(ZB9)

在汉译中当然可以有不同的措辞。

例组 11-4

1. Work should come before pleasure.
2. You must pay attention to this problem before all.
3. The eldest son is before the younger is succession.
4. He always puts the interests of others before his own.
5. The soldiers would die before yielding.

译文 11-4

1. 工作应该在先而后享乐。
2. 你必须首先对这一问题予以注意。
3. 在继承权上长子优先于诸弟妹。
4. 他总是把别人的利益放在他自己的利益之前。
5. 士兵们宁死不屈。

2) Behind在这一用法中的意义还是

behind ZB→在ZB之后 (ZB12)

如“在幕后，在脑后”等等；要是学习，手艺等在别人之后则属于比较；即“落后于”，“不如”等。

例组 11-5

1. She is behind the other girls in sewing.
2. He is behind none of them in his study.
3. He was behind the others in ability, but before them in dilligence.

4. The decisions were made behind the scenes.
5. There is smile behind his frown.
6. He put the idea behind him.

译文 11-5

1. 她在缝纫方面落后于别的女孩。
2. 他在学习上不比任何人落后。
3. 他在能力上不如别人，但在勤奋上胜过他们。
4. 那决定是在幕后作出的。
5. 在愁眉苦脸的后面他暗中在微笑。
6. 他把那想法置之脑后。

在例组11-5中：例句1~3都属于明显的比较，例句4~6则事物的发生在ZC的后面或没有发生在应发生之处。

练习 11-1

择优填入above, below, beneath, over, under, before和behind等介词并汉译各句。

1. Goods are to be sold...the cost price.
2. It is...my dignity to do such a thing.
3. His accusations are...contempt.
4. In order to qualify, one must jump...two meters.
5. He obeys the law and always drives...the speed limit.
6. We must put the interests of the people...all else.
7. I won't hear anything said against him...his back.

8. His attainments are far...his predecessors.
9. There were...thirty people who couldn't get seats on the bus.
10. Pride comes...a fall!
11. She acts as though she were...us.
12. It is...her to do this kind of work.
13. Wheat is now...twenty cents a catty
14. The supply of these books is still far...the demand.
15. It is illegal to drive...the speed limit.
16. During the winter the temperature often goes...the yearly norm.
17. We could feel the threat...all they said.
18. Birth control makes the population here...100,000
19. Your conduct is...the dignity of a gentleman.
20. Output of most of the products is...that for last year.

11.3 中间内外

归入这一用法的介词有以下几个。

1) Between的意义, 象它用于空间时一样, 是
between ZB_1 and ZB_2 → 在 ZB_1 和 ZB_2 之间 (ZB18)

例组 11-6

1. The flavour is between sour and sweet.
2. The relation between teacher and pupil is not

what it used to be.

3. They had to decide between station and surrender.
4. Don't let such a trivial matter as this come between us.
5. Between us, we ought to be able to find a solution to the problem.
6. The twin had only one umbrella between them.
7. Between you and me, he is rather stupid.
8. This matter is just between ourselves.
9. Between astonishment and joy, she could hardly say a word.
10. Before liberation, peasants were struggling between hunger and cold.

译文 11-6

1. 那味道是在酸甜之间。
2. 教生之间的关系已不是以前那样了。
3. 他们不得不在饥饿与投降之间作出决定。
4. 不要让这样的小事介入我们之间。
5. 你我之间应该能够合力找出那问题的解答。
6. 那双胞胎之间只合用一把伞。
7. 只在你我之间说说，他是相当愚蠢。
8. 这件事情只是你我间的事。
9. 惊喜交集，她几乎说不出话来。
10. 解放前，农民在饥寒交迫中挣扎着。

从例组11-6可以看出：象用于空间和时间中那样，介词

between的译意为“之间”几乎是唯一的；各例句基本上都是这样；要注意的是例句5和6暗示了“合力和合用”；例句7和8则暗示了“不可为外人道”；例句9和10表示了两者之间的联合交替作用，汉译中以“交集”和“交迫”代替了直接的“之间”。

2) Amid用来表明事物的存在或发生是在众多而不同于原事物的当中，即

amid ZB→在ZB当中 (ZB19)

例组 11-7

1. This book was written amid many difficulties.
2. He descended from the platform amid applause.
3. Amid the panic around her she remained cool.
4. Amid my disappointment a strange rage was buring with me.

译文 11-7

1. 这本书是在重重困难中予以写下的。
2. 他在掌声中走下了台。
3. 她在她周围一片惊慌中保持着冷静。
4. 在我的失望中有一种无名怒火在我心中燃烧着。

3) Among表明事物的存在或发生是在众多而类似的事物中间，即

among ZB→在ZB的中间 (ZB20)

例组 11-8

1. He has many friends among the students.
2. She found herself among complete strangers.
3. He may have recognized the man among us.
4. A difference arose among the members of the committee.
5. This mountain is among the highest of the world.
6. Li Bai was among the world's greatest poets.
7. He was numbered among the successful men of the town.
8. She was among those who received honours at graduation.
9. She distributed the food among the refugees.
10. The sweets are to be shared among the six children.
11. The brothers have three thousand dollars among them.
12. You must settle the matter among yourselves.
13. Among other things, she is a talented musician.
14. Among other things, he spoke about his life in China.
15. He is very brave, among other good traits.

译文 11-8

1. 他在学生中间有许多朋友。

2. 她发现自己完全处在素不相识的人中间。
3. 他也许在我们中间认出了那个人。
4. 分歧已在委员会的成员中间发生了。
5. 这座山是世界上最高的山之一。
6. 李白是举世最伟大的诗人之一。
7. 他在他家乡有成就的人中已被算上一个。
8. 她是毕业典礼上接受荣誉的人之一。
9. 她已把食物在难民中间分发。
10. 那些糖果要在那六个儿童中间平均分配。
11. 那弟兄中间合共有三千元。
12. 你们必须在自己一伙中间了结那件事情。
13. 连同别的情况在内，她是个有才能的音乐家。
14. 除了其它情节外，他还谈到了他在中国的生活。
15. 在各种不同的优良品质中，他也是很勇敢的。

在例组11-8中我们可以注意到：

例句1~4都明显地在同类事物的中间；

例句5~8中事物都为其中之一，特别是与最高级结合时。

例句9和10是事物在ZB中间分配，而例句11和12中ZB本身含有联合意义；

例句13~15中的among other things是一个惯用介词词组，译文中作了三种译法：“连同…在内”，“除了…外”，和“在…中”，实际上它们都没有失去“在ZB的中间”的含意。

4) Within象它用于空间一样，是表明事物存在或发生在一定范围之内，即

Within ZB → 在ZB之内 (ZB15)

例组 11-9

1. It is best to live within one's means.
2. The book is within reach of the students.
3. This matter does not come within our jurisdiction.
4. He's never refused to do anything within reason.
5. He could feel that sentiment stirring within him..

译文 11-9

1. 最好要量入为出过日子。(在收入围范围内)
2. 那本书是在学生力所能及的范围内。
3. 这一事情不在我们的权限之内。
4. 他从没有拒绝过做些任何合理范围内的事情。
5. 他可以感到那种在他内心里激动着的感情。

5) Outside用于空间时指事物的存在或发生是在XB的外边, 在这里也一样, 即

outside ZB → 在ZB之外 (ZB17)

但在这里可以转意为‘超越ZB’, 亦即‘在ZB范围之外’, 如: 例组11-10中例句4和5。

例组 11-10

1. He has few hobbies or interests outside sports and games.
2. That is outside my plan.
3. He has no occupation outside his office work.
4. The subject is outside the children's knowledge.

5. I cannot make concession which is outside the regulation.

译文 11-10

1. 运动和球赛之外他别无爱好和兴趣。
2. 那是在我的计划之外。
3. 上班工作外他别无职业。
4. 那问题超出了儿童的知识范围。
5. 我不能作出越规的让步。

11.4 过与不及

用于空间和时间时, past和beyond XD以及past和beyond VD都属于动态“过”; 用于人世间时, 它们仍保留着“过”的含义, 但主要是用来作为事物的比较; 它们常可以通用, 有时与above也可通用。Above(XB1)和beyond(XB24)都可以用于空间的位置, 在这点上past与它们有区别。

beyond ZB→超出ZB (ZB24)

past ZB→超出ZB (ZB25)

例组 11-11

1. There were not beyond twenty people present.
2. He is far beyond his brother in English.
3. The completeness of the victory was beyond all expectation.
4. Beyond this I know nothing.
5. I have heard nothing beyond that he is ill.
6. The task is beyond my strength.

7. It is beyond my power to give it to you.
8. The scenery is beautiful beyond my description.
9. Your work is beyond all praise.
10. That prisoner's guilt was proved beyond doubt.
11. His conduct has been beyond reproach.
12. That fellow's insolence is beyond endurance.
13. The landscape here is beyond compare.
14. His passing is a loss beyond measure to us.
15. The rumor is past(beyond) belief.
16. Cancer is now said to be past(beyond) cure.
17. I don't think the child is past(beyond)all hope.
18. The days of your youth are past(beyond) recall

译文 11-11

1. 出席的人数没有超过二十。
2. 在英语方面他远远超过他的兄弟。
3. 彻底的胜利完全超出意料之外。
4. 此外我一无所知。
5. 只知他病了外我毫无所闻。
6. 那一任务不是我的力量所能及。
7. 把它给你非我的权力所能及。
8. 那景色已美丽得非我所能形容。
9. 你的工作已不尽赞美。
10. 那囚犯的罪行已可证明不容怀疑。
11. 他的行为一直无可指责。
12. 那家伙的傲慢已使人忍无可忍。
13. 这里的风景是无与伦比。

14. 他的逝世是对我们无法估量的损失。
15. 那谣言已不足置信。
16. 癌症现在据说难以治愈。
17. 我不认为那孩子已毫无希望。
18. 你年青的时代已不堪回首。

11.5 相比近似

归入这一用法的介词有下面几个。

1) Beside用于空间时指在XB的旁边，由此引伸用于人世间的意义为两方面事物并列相比，即

beside ZB → 比起ZB (ZB16)

例组 11-12

1. You are quite tall beside your sister.
2. My merit is little beside yours.
3. Beside his efforts ours seem small.
4. I really think that opinion is beside the point.
5. He is quite beside himself with joy.
6. The child was almost beside himself with fear.

译文 11-12

1. 比起你的妹妹你是相当高的了。
2. 比起你的优点来我的算不了什么。
3. 比起他的成果来我们的似乎很小。
4. 我真的认为那意见与问题无关。
5. 他高兴得忘其所以。
6. 那孩子吓得几乎发狂。

在例组11-12中；例句4是指与原问题相比，其中beside

the point (question, mark) 是惯用词组；例句5和6的 beside oneself 也是惯用词组，意为已非自己原状。

2) About 用于空间位置的含意之一“在XB附近”，在这里转意为“大约”，“左右”等，即

about ZB → 大约ZB或ZB左右 (ZB21)

例组 11-13

1. He is about my statue.
2. About how much wire do you want?
3. He opened the door gently about an inch.
4. There were about one hundred people at the meeting.
5. The building is about as high as the white pagoda.

译文 11-13

1. 他差不多象我一般的身材。
2. 你大约要多少电线？
3. 他轻轻把门推开了一时光景。
4. 到会的有一百人左右。
5. 那大楼大约有白塔那高。

3) Like 基本上专用于人世间，它的意义是‘好象’，‘例如’等。

like ZB → 象ZB (ZB26)

在下面例组11-14中例句9和10分别有惯用介词词组 something like 和 like anything，它们的译意分别为“有些象”，和“什么也象”译时可以按句中意义采用适当的汉

词。

例组 11-14

1. In the sky, airplane looks like toy.
2. The sun is like a gigantic heater that keeps earth warm.
3. The calm water surface is very much like a mirror.
4. The boy was like his brother in looks.
5. Let me speak to you like a father.
6. There is no place like home.
7. It was just like him to say that.
8. Don't be so pessimistic, it's not like you.
9. It'll cost something like ¥100.
10. He works like anything when he is in high spirit.
11. They're cold-blooded like fish, but they always have lungs like mammals.
12. Animals that live in water, like whales, animals that live on the land, like people, and some live partly in the water and partly on land, like frogs.

译文 11-14

1. 在天空中, 飞机看上去好象玩具。
2. 太阳象个保持地球温暖的巨大火炉。
3. 那平静的水面十分象一面镜子。
4. 那男孩在外貌上象他的哥哥。

5. 让我象个父亲那样对你谈话。
6. 没有地方可以比得上家。
7. 只有象他那样才会说出那样的话。
8. 不要这样的悲观，这不象你这种人。
9. 这要花费约摸一百元。
10. 兴高采烈时他就拼了命工作。
11. 它们象鱼一样是冷血动物，但它们又象哺乳动物一样总长着肺。
12. 生活在水中的动物，例如鲸，生活在陆上的，如人，而有些有时在水中有时在陆上，如蛙。

练习 11-2

择优填入about, among, beside, between, beyond, outside, past, within, 和like各介词并汉译下列各句。

1. I was...the first to arrive.
2. A desperate struggle was going on...her.
3. My gratitude is...my power of expression.
4. ...this piece of information all else was trivial.
5. We got on together...old friends.
6. He is...two meters high.
7. The pain was almost...bearing.
8. ...her house-keeping, what does she have?
9. The parcel weighs...ten and twelve pounds.
10. A desire for revenge burned...him.
11. Why he did it is quite...my comprehension.
12. That remark is entirely...the question.
13. They rose...one man in the struggle.

14. Traditional Chinese paintings aroused special interest...tourists.
15. Only...a third of our land was arable.
16. The old man is...work.
17. That is...his interests.
18. There had been a lifelong friendship...them.
19. There was a lot of discontent...the works.
20. A coolness has been growing...him and his girl friend.
21. Computers previously...our capacity are now being made.
22. He looks nothing...seventy-eight.
23. No one knows...the members of our team.
24. The trouble was they couldn't agree...themselves.
25. He valued it...everything.

第十二章 来龙去脉(上)

来龙去脉包括事物存在或发生的三个方面：(1)意向；(2)事由；和(3)及于，我们把它们分述于十二，十三，和十四章。

这一章的意向是指事物存在或发生的目标，目的和对象。

12.1 目标和方向

1) At 用于事物朝着一定目标的各种活动，它们主要是注视，笑骂，猜测等短暂的，又常是感官上的活动。它的介词词组可以概括为：

at ZC → 朝着 ZC (ZC1)

这与XC1完全一样，这种介词宾语可以说是跨空间的；还有别的介词也是如此。

例组 12-1

1. She stood gazing at me.
2. I stole a glance at her.
3. Don't jeer at the mistake of others.
4. The dog barked at the stranger.
5. When he is angry, he storms at everyone.
6. I hinted at his imprudence.
7. He guessed at the truth.

8. He aims at becoming a computer expert.

译文 12-1

1. 她站着朝着我盯视。
2. 我朝她偷看了一眼。
3. 不要对别人的错误嘲笑。
4. 那只狗朝着陌生人狂叫。
5. 他生气时朝着每个人大发雷霆。
6. 我对他的鲁莽作了暗示。
7. 他对真实情况作了猜测。
8. 他企图成为一个计算机专家。

2) On 是用于事物向一定的对象所采取行动的目标, 这种行动主要是侵犯和影响等。

on ZC → 向ZC (ZC2)

例组 12-2

1. They made war upon the invaders.
2. Aggression on small nation is an evil.
3. We won't allow any encroachment upon our territory.
4. I hope I'm not intruding on your valuable time.
5. A high tax is imposed on foreign cars.
6. Our government has laid embargo on the export of oil on the belligerents.
7. Weather has an influence upon the corps.
8. A word from the teacher will have a great effect on our children.

译文 12-2

1. 他们已向侵略者开战。
2. 对弱小国家的侵犯是一种罪恶。
3. 我们不会允许对我们的领土有所侵犯。
4. 我希望我没有侵占你的宝贵时间。
5. 对外国汽车要予以征收高税。
6. 我们政府已经禁止向交战国输出石油。
7. 气候对庄稼成长有影响。
8. 老师的一句讲对我们的孩子有很大的影响。

3) Toward(s), 除了象用于空间那样表示方向外, 在这里还表示对象和目的。我们有

toward(s) ZC → 向/对/为 ZC (ZC8)

例组 12-3

1. This was the first step toward peace.
2. Our country is rapidly moving toward prosperity.
3. Things are working toward a solution of the problem.
4. Youth is strongly drawn toward the new idea.
5. He gave a subscription toward the new hospital.
6. She has a motherly feeling toward the boy.
7. His attitude toward life was being altered.
8. The public showed much apathy toward the plan.

9. He has saved something toward his son's education.
10. Here is one hundred dollars toward your loss.

译文 12-3

1. 这是走向和平的第一步。
2. 我们的国家正在迅速地走向繁荣。
3. 事物正朝着问题的解决而发展。
4. 青年人是强烈地倾向于新思想。
5. 他向那新医院提供了捐助。
6. 她对那男孩具有慈母般的感情。
7. 他对人生的态度已在改变。
8. 公众表现了对那计划的漠不关心。
9. 他已经为他儿子的教育积蓄了一些钱。
10. 这里是为补偿你的损失的一百元钱。

12.2 目的

在4.2节中所讲目的地意指计算要到达的终点，含意简单，而所用的唯一介词为 for。在人世间中，目的是指企图要达到的结果；这里就名目繁多，大的有为人己为事业，求名求利求知识；此外，它与对象有时也不易区分，譬如“东西给人”，“人”是对象，但说成是“目的人”似乎更好（见杨崇光著英语前置词）。

介词 for 是表达目的的主要介词，可以概括为：

for ZC → 为或为了 ZC (ZC6)

一) 为事业

例组 12-4

1. To die for one's country is an honour.
2. We must strive for independence and liberty.
3. He was a staunch fighter for democracy.
4. Some toil for money, some for fame.
5. The dam supplies water for irrigation as well as electric power.
6. All teams will compete for the prize.
7. He provided for his children's future.
8. What do you go to school for?

译文 12-4

1. 为国捐躯是一种光荣。
2. 我们必须为独立和自由而奋斗。
3. 他是个为民主斗争的坚强战士。
4. 有些人为图利而卖力，另一些人则是为了成名。
5. 那水坝为灌溉以及发电而提供水源。
6. 所有的队都将为夺奖而竞赛。
7. 他为他孩子的前途作了准备。
8. 你为什么要去上学？

二) 为人

例组 12-5

1. This book is written for Chinese student.
2. They would do anything for the people.
3. Public schools for girls were established

in some place.

4. He is unworthy to live who lives only for himself.
5. Would you go and post the letter for me?
6. There is a telegram for you.
7. A package had been left for her.
8. Who is this present for?

译文 12-5

1. 这一本书是为了中国学生编写的。
2. 他们愿意为了人民去做任何事情。
3. 专供女孩子读书的公立学校已在一些地方予以建立。
4. 光是为了自己而活的人是没有活的价值。
5. 你愿意去把这封信替我寄出吗?
6. 有一份给你的电报。
7. 有个包裹曾留下来给她。
8. 这一礼物是给哪一个的?

12.3 对象

对象可以是多种多样的。归纳分述于后。所用介词有for和against两个，概括说来：

for ZC → 对ZC (), (ZC6a)
against ZC → 对ZC (), (ZC7)

括号中内容依对象种类和性质而填入。由于它们常与其它词类搭配，也可以直接意译

一) 赞成和爱好以及反对和厌恶的对象

1) For用于赞成和爱好以及它们的否定。

例组 12-6

1. Are you for or against the motion?
2. The decision of our meeting was for strike.
3. We were for cutting down the cost of production.
4. I am all for anything that will make our work easier.
5. He has a great love for his motherland.
6. He has a keen zest for winter sports.
7. She has preference for classic music.
8. Children have a fondness for sweets.

译文 12-6

1. 你是赞成还是反对那提案?
2. 我们会议的决议是赞成罢工的。
3. 我们主张削减生产成本。
4. 我完全拥护任何可以使我们的工作更省力的事物。
5. 他热爱他的祖国。
6. 他对冬季运动有强烈的兴趣。(他热爱...)
7. 她对古典音乐有偏爱。(她偏爱...)
8. 儿童对糖果有僻爱。(儿童喜爱...)

例组 12-7

1. He has always had an affection for the child.
2. She always expresses good sympathy for others.
3. Eyeglasses are indispensable for myopic people.

4. They has considerable respect for their teachers.
5. There will be plenty of opportunities for a girl like her.
6. Only you can decide what's best for you.
7. It is too difficult a task for her.

译文 12-7

1. 他一直对那孩子有感情。
2. 她总是对别人表示深切的同情。
3. 眼镜对患近视的人是不可少的。
4. 他们对老师相当尊敬。
5. 对她那样的女孩子会有许多机会。
6. 只有你自己才能决定什么对你最好。
7. 这对她是个太困难的任务。

例组12-6中例句1~5都直接用同意动词汉译,“对”只是隐含,用公式(ZC6a)也可以的,不过不合汉语习惯用法;例句6~7则用了公式(ZC6a)。例组12-7中都采用了公式。

2) Against的主要意义是反对,在这一对象中它用来表达反对,违背,反抗,反叛等;在例组12-8中都是以这些词组直译,引用公式也是可以的,不过比较噜嗦,甚至相当别扭。

例组 12-8

1. They are against reform.
2. An ignorant person has a prejudice agaiast

new idea.

3. Her parents are very much set against the marriage.
4. It is against the tradition of China.
5. I will speak against anything I know to be wrong.
6. She was married against her will.
7. They banded together against oppression.
8. The traitor plotted against the country.

译文 12-8

1. 他们是反对改革的。
2. 一个无知的人具有反对新思想的偏见。
3. 她的父母坚决反对那婚事。
4. 这是违反中国传统的。
5. 我要提出反对任何我认为错误的事物。
6. 她是违背自己的意志结了婚的。
7. 他们结合在一起反抗压迫。
8. 那卖国贼已阴谋叛国。

二) 适合与否的对象

- 1) For表示适合, 足够, 等等以及它们的否定。

例组 12-9

1. He has a natural gift for teaching.
2. He is the very man for the job.
3. Very few could qualify for the final.
4. She is too old for that job.

5. It is such a fine day for an outing.
6. Ice cream is appropriate for a hot day.
7. The money is not adequate for the purpose.
8. There is no precedent for this situation.

译文 12-9

1. 他对教学具有天赋。
 2. 他正是对那工作最适合的人。
 3. 只有极少数的人能够对那决赛取得资格。
 4. 对于那工作她已超龄了。
 5. 今天是这样一個适合于郊游的好日子。
 6. 冰激淋对热天是及时的。
 7. 这笔钱对那用途是不够的。
 8. 对这一情况是没有先例的。
- 2) Against表示不准, 不利, 等等。

例组 12-10

1. Is there a law against spitting in the street here?
2. The school has a regulation against smoking.
3. The war ran against the enemy.
4. There is no evidence against her.
5. It was an act of aggression against him.
6. I shall file a complaint against him.
7. I bear no resentment against her.
8. Many murmured against his leadership.

译文 12-10

1. 这里有没有不准在街上随地吐痰的法律?
2. 那学校有不许吸烟的规章。
3. 那战争已发展到对敌人不利。
4. 没有对她不利的证据。
5. 这是个对他的侵犯行为。
6. 我将对他提出控诉。
7. 我没有对她怀恨在心。
8. 许多人都对他的领导低声抱怨。

三) 准备和防止的对象

- 1) For用于准备要做什么, 不仅是好事, 也可以相反。

例组 12-11

1. I was educated for the politics.
2. My father intended me for a physician.
3. I have been preparing myself for the examination.
4. It is time to dress for dinner.
5. Are these pictures for sale?
6. Have you make any preparation for your trip?
7. We could only hope for the best.
8. We must be prepared for the worst.

译文 12-11

1. 我对政治受过了教育。
2. 我父亲打算使我成为一个内科医生。

3. 我一直在准备去考试。
 4. 现在是穿好衣服准备吃饭的时候了。
 5. 这些图片是不是准备出售的？
 6. 你是否对你的旅行已作了些准备？
 7. 我们只能望最好的方向打算。
 8. 我们必须作最坏的准备。
- 2) Against用于预防或防备什么。

例组 12-12

1. Take precautions against fire.
2. A fire is a protection against cold.
3. People stored up water to prepare against drought.
4. Passengers are warned against pickpockets.
5. You must take measures against disease.
6. Be careful to guard against mistakes in your composition.
7. They sounded a warning against all these tendencies.
8. We prepared him against the bad news.

译文 12-12

1. 采取措施预防火灾。
2. 炉子是防御寒冷的。
3. 人民贮积了水以预防干旱。
4. 旅客受到了谨防扒手的警告。
5. 你必须采取预防疾病的措施。

6. 注意防止你作文中的错误。
7. 他们敲响了防止所有这些倾向的警钟。
8. 我们已对他听了那不幸消息作了预防措施。

四) 相比对象

1) For在这里表达“对ZC来说”，这与式(ZC6a)相符。

例组 12-13

1. Her English writing is not bad for a beginner.
2. He looks unusually strong for a man of seventy.
3. He ran the race well for a man out of training.
4. His reading knowledge seems unbelievable for a boy of ten.
5. Plant a new tree for every tree you cut down.
6. Rewrite two words for every one you misspell-ed.

译文 12-13

1. 对一个初学者来说她的英语写作不算坏。
2. 对一个七十岁的人来说他看上去异常强健。
3. 对一个缺乏训练的人来说他赛跑得不错。
4. 对一个十岁的孩子来说他的阅读知识似乎难以置信。
5. 对每一棵你砍下了的树要种一棵新的。
6. 对每一个你拼错了的词要重新再写两个。

2) Against在这里为对比。

例组 12-14

1. He was elected by a majority of 30 votes against 5.
2. Thirty students have passed this year against 25 last year.
3. The business done this year amounts to ¥20,000 as against 18,000 last year.
4. The rates against U. S. dollars are increasing recently.
5. A run on gold against rouble took place last week.
6. They evenly matched against each other.

译文 12-14

1. 他以三十票对五票的多数当选。
2. 对比去年有二十五个学生及格而今年为三十个。
3. 比起去年的一万八今年营业总额达两万元。
4. 对美元的兑换率最近正在上升。
5. 卢布挤兑黄金的风潮发生于上星期。
6. 他们彼此相对势均力敌。

练习 12-1

择优填入用于目标, 方向, 目的, 和对象的介词, 并汉译下列各句:

1. He planned to write some stories...children.
2. I merely glanced...the headings.

3. The army marched...Berlin in all directions.
4. I don't know how to act...him.
5. He did not even hint...the nature of his business.
6. He would do anything...the people.
7. He has won honour...the country.
8. What will people's attitude be...the plan?
9. That book made a great impression...me
when I was young.
10. Would you like me to interpret...you?
11. The government is tending...despotism.
12. There is a telegram...you.
13. He is going to get materials...a new book.
14. They have infringed...our patent rights.
15. Ali smiled...his own folly.
16. They fought bravely...the fascist aggressors.
17. Are you...the new policy?
18. Much might be said...or...the measure.
19. They took measures...tree diseases.
20. She has a good ear...music.
21. The villagers stored up water to prepared
...draught.
22. This is a good medicine...colds.
23. The evidence was quite...him.
24. The damp weather is bad...rheumatism.
25. Is there a law...smoking in the public.
26. I must say you look unusually fit...your age.
27. The purchase was charged...his account.

28. They were evenly matched...each other.

29. She is quite strong...a girl.

30. I am too old...the task.

12.4 希望和追求

希望和追求的对象或目的是各种具体的或抽象的事物。所用介词有for和after两个，它们有时可以通用（见例组12-17）。

1) For常与动词搭配，可以按动词意译。

例组 12-15

1. We all hope for an enduring peace.
2. The students are eager for knowledge.
3. That boy is mad for a bicycle.
4. The search for happiness is the greatest problem of life.
5. They are hunting for the lost book.
6. I asked her for some stamps.
7. Someone has been on the phone for you twice.
8. Shall I ring for the ambulance?
9. Do you care for some more tea?

译文 12-15

1. 我们都希望有个持久的和平。
2. 学生们都渴求知识。
3. 那孩子极其想要一辆自行车。
4. 寻求幸福是人生的一个最重要的问题。

5. 他们正在寻找那丢失的书。
6. 我向她要些邮票。
7. 有人已经两次在电话上找过你。
8. 我要不要打电话叫救护车?
9. 你要再来点茶吗?

例组12-16中各例句都属于介词for的一种特殊结构,即介词宾语后附加一作为介词词组补充语的不定式词组(for+宾语+to+动词),后一个词组只是宾语的修饰语而整个词组还是与介词词组一样可以用作为句子中的各种功能。

例组 12-16

1. For anyone to cheat in examination is punishable.
2. She longed for her boy to come back early.
3. The advice is for us to consider carefully.
4. It is necessary for you to learn English.
5. She brought some papers for me to sign.
6. Prepositions can be left blank for the readers to fill in.
7. There is no need for anyone to know.
8. This book is easy enough for me to read in an hour.
9. This box is too heavy for the boy to lift.

译文 12-16

1. 对一个在考试中作弊的人是要处罚的。
2. 她盼望他的孩子早点回来。

3. 那意见是要我们去细仔考虑。
4. 要你去学习英语是必要的。
5. 她带来了些文件要我签名。
6. 各介词可以留出空白以便让读者去填入。
7. 没有让任何人知道的必要。
8. 这本书要我在一个小时内读完是够容易的。
9. 这只箱子要那孩子提起来是太重了。

2) After用于时间时的意义是“在YB以后”，用于人世间时它与某些动词搭配后就转意为“追赶，追求，渴求，等”意义，而它的宾语成为对象或目的，因之

after ZC → 追求ZC (ZC10)

例组 12-17

1. The boy is racing after the butterflies.
2. They started after the enemy in hot haste.
3. He was capable of looking after his trouble himself.
4. We ought to hunger after (for) knowledge.
5. All men search after (for) happiness.
6. The mother yearns after (for) her children.

译文 12-17

1. 那孩子正在追捕蝴蝶。
2. 他们紧跟不舍地追赶了敌人。
3. 他是能够自己照顾自己的困难的。
4. 我们应渴求知识。
5. 人人都在追求幸福。

6. 那母亲极其怀念她的孩子们。

12.5 交换代替

在这一标题下我们有交换和作价，代表和代替，当作和作为，等等，意义交叉复杂，下面归纳为三类予以分别举例。所用介词以for为主，另有若干专用介词。总的说来

for, etc, ZC—→代替, 作为, ZC (ZC25)

1) For用在这里的含意最多, 包括代表, 交换等

例组 12-18

1. I can only give my opinion, I cannot speak for you.
2. He is a lawyer acting for his client.
3. The symbol 'x' usually stands for the unknown quantity.
4. We used boxes for chairs.
5. She exchanged honour for death.
6. I will give my watch for your camera.
7. We pay ¥50 a month for the room and board.
8. They sold the bike to me for ¥100.

译文 12-18

1. 我只能提出我的意见而不能代表你们讲话。
2. 他是个代表他当事人的律师。
3. 符号'x'通常代表未知量。
4. 我们把这些箱子用来代替椅子。

5. 她以荣誉换回了死亡。
6. 我愿意把我的表给你换取你的照相机。
7. 我们每月付五十元作为房饭钱。
8. 他们把那自行车作价一百元卖了给我。

例组12-18中：例句1~3为代表；例句4为代替或当作；例句5~8都属于交换。

For 表达“作为”时属于意图中的事，或者发生事实之前，或者并非事实。

例组 12-19

1. This book is suitable for a present to a boy.
2. That old edition won't do for a textbook.
3. The room is fitted for laboratory use.
4. I shall be very glad to have you for a friend.
5. He would pass for a Chinese very easily.
6. They left him on the battle field for dead.
7. I gave the watch up for lost.
8. It is only meant for a joke.
9. Do you take me for a fool?

译文 12-19

1. 这一本书作为一件送给男孩的礼物是合适的。
2. 那一老版本作为教科书是不行的。
3. 这一房间是作为实验室之用而予以装备的。
4. 有你这样一个人作为朋友我感到十分荣幸。
5. 他可以很容易地看作是个中国人。
6. 他们把他当作死人留在战场上。

7. 我把那只表作为已经丢失而不再问了。
8. 这只是作为玩笑说说的。
9. 你是不是把我当作傻瓜？

2) As 表达“作为”是从事实出发而不是属于意图。下面把as的这一用法分为：例组12-20，其中以人为对象；例组12-21中以事物为对象。

例组 12-20

1. He began his career as a teacher.
2. He was highly respected as a judge and as a man.
3. We chose him as our football coach.
4. He was ordered to be departed as an undesirable alien.
5. Three men were detained as suspects.
6. Don't treat me as a child.
7. He is universally acknowledged as an authority.
8. The actor who appeared as Romeo was my good friend.
9. Disguised as a priest, he went aboard a ship to sail for Iceland.

译文 12-20

1. 他以作为一个教师开始了他的事业。
2. 他作为一个审判员也作为一个人而受到崇高的尊敬。
3. 我们选择了他作为我们的足球教练。
4. 他以作为一个不受欢迎的外国人而奉命被遣返。
5. 三个人作为嫌疑犯而被拘留。

6. 不要把我当作孩子来看待。
7. 他作为一个权威已得到举世公认。
8. 扮作罗密欧出场的那个演员是我的朋友。
9. 伪装成一个牧师，他上了开往冰岛的船。

例组 12-21

1. This watch was given as a birthday present.
2. A worm will serve as bait.
3. As a work of art it is very poor.
4. Can we take this document as proof of his guilt?
5. We should think everything in our world as chemicals.
6. We were taken to a room furnished as a study.
7. They walked across the field as a shortcut.
8. Don't accept everything you see on T.V as true.

译文 12-21

1. 这一只表是作为生日礼物而送给的。
 2. 蚯蚓可以用来作为钓饵。
 3. 作为艺术品那是相当差的。
 4. 我们能不能把这文件作为他的罪证？
 5. 我们应把我们世界上的一切看作是化学品。
 6. 我们被带到一间装饰为书室的房间。
 7. 他们步行穿过了作为抄近路的田野。
 8. 不要把你在电视上看到的一切都信以为真。
- 3) 代替：这里我们有instead of, in lieu of, in place

of, on behalf of等组合介词, 它们都作代替解, 但可以有不同的汉译。

例组 12-22

1. He will go instead of you.
2. The workers use cotton instead of wool.
3. The vegetarians present were given cheese dishes instead of meat.
4. He wanted to play pingpong instead of going for a walk.
5. He spoke on behalf of his friend.
6. The chairman thanked the speaker in behalf of the members.
7. I shall go in lieu of the old professor.
8. Children watched TV in lieu of doing their home work.
9. Why don't you use my book in place of the one you lost.
10. Plastics have often been used now in place of wood or metal.

译文 12-22

1. 他将代替你去。
2. 工人们用棉花代替羊毛。
3. 到场吃素的人都得到奶酪的菜以代替肉类。
4. 他原想去打乒乓而不是去散步。
5. 他代表他的朋友讲了话。

6. 那主席代表各成员道谢了讲演的人。
7. 我将代替那老教授前去。
8. 孩子们观看了电视代替做他们的作业。
9. 你为什么不用我的书以代替你遗失的那本?
10. 塑料现在已经经常被用来代替木料或金属。

练习 12-2

择优填入用于“希望和追求”以及“更换和代替”各介词，并汉译下列各句：

1. Every time you reacted ... a girl, not ... a man.
2. His aspiration ... fame is praise-worthy.
3. The child is mad ... a bicycle.
4. It would be best ... you to write to him.
5. Why did they choose him ... Ali?
6. He accepted the cup ... the team.
7. ... carrying an umbrella, he wears a rain-coat.
8. I am going into the shop ... some matches.
9. Hasten ... him and give him the message.
10. Whether we shall go is ... you to decide.
11. They didn't want a person like that ... a neighbour.
12. I demand it ... a right.
13. Students sent request ... books and other materials.
14. We walked the stairs ... taking the elevator.
15. We choose it ... the most suitable ... our purpose.

16. He hungered ... righteousness.
17. I've got some picture books ... you to look at.
18. I shall spend the afternoon here ... at the office.
19. The police searched long ... the culprit.
20. Prepositions can be left blank ... the readers to fill in.
21. Will you take this woman ... your wife?
22. The bulding will serve ... the office of the company.
23. I would not do it ... one hundred dollars.
24. They sent their drafts to other units ... comments.
25. Would you like to try some Chinese medicine ... your health.

第十三章 来龙去脉(中)

第十二章所述的目标, 方向和目的基本上是意图上的, 这一章和第十四章将分别叙述具体的来龙去脉。用于来龙的介词不少, 但它们的译意可以概括为“从, 由于, 出于”; 而它们所联系的事物则可以归结为一个“原”字。

13.1 来源

来源是指事物的存在或发生是从何 ZC 开始的; 所用介词有 from, off, out of, 和 of 四个介词; 它们的意义基本上相同, 但表达的内容各有重点, 兹分组例解于后。

1) From 着重表达由来, 介词词组为:

from ZC → 从或由 ZC (ZC11)

例组 13-1

1. Beer is made from barley.
2. These plants spring from tiny seeds.
3. Many English words are derived from Latin.
4. This edition is abridged from the original.
5. The play was adapted form a novel.
6. The materials have been gathered from various sources.
7. Some facts were sifted from the many rumours.
8. Everyone felt that he spoke from his heart.

译文 13-1

1. 啤酒是由大麦酿制的。
2. 这些花草都是从微小的种子发芽成长的。
3. 许许多多英语单词都来源于拉丁文。
4. 这一版本是从原著节略而编写的。
5. 这一剧本是从小说改编的。
6. 这些资料是从各种来源收集的。
7. 有些事实是从许多谣传中筛选出来的。
8. 人人都感到他是从心里说出来的。

从例组13-1可以看出，各例句表达了事物的各种不同来源；它们的共同点是由此而来的事物在形式和性质上都有所改变，着重指明了由来。

2) off偏重于表明离去，介词词组为：

off ZC—>从ZC (离去) (ZC13)

例组 13-2

1. He borrowed ¥10 off (from) his sister.
2. I bought the book off (from) a wandering pedlar.
3. The family had to dine off leftover scraps.
4. He makes his living off the tourists.
5. He took 10% off the regular price.
6. That is a little place off the map.
7. The good news took a load off my mind.

译文 13-2

1. 他从他的姐姐那里借到了十元钱。
2. 我从流动小贩那里买到了那本书。
3. 那一家庭不得不从残查剩饭中凑和吃一顿。
4. 他靠旅客维持他的生活。
5. 他从原价上削减了百分之十。
6. 那是个从地图上找不到的小地方。
7. 那好消息使我从思想上消除了一件心事。

从例组13-2可以看出：各例句表达“离去”的意义十分明显；译文中仍都用了“从”；即使例句4的“靠旅客”也可说成是“从旅客的腰包”。

3) Out of着重指明出处，介词词组为：

out of ZC → 由或从ZC (ZC14)

例组 13-3

1. Flour is made out of wheat.
2. The steps were cut out of the solid rock.
3. Men have learned how to make magnets out of iron.
4. I paid for it out of the housekeeping money.
5. It was a scene out of a play.
6. It is sometimes more difficult to translate than to write out of one's own mind.
7. You may choose one or two out of them.
8. This is only one instance out of several.

译文 13-3

1. 面粉是由小麦磨制的。
2. 这些台阶是从坚硬的石块凿出来的。
3. 人类已经学会如何从生铁制出磁铁。
4. 我是从家用款项中把它支付的。
5. 这是从剧本里选出来的一幕场景。
6. 翻译有时要比从一个人的头脑里写出来的更难。
7. 你可以从他们中选出一两个。
8. 这不过是从几件事件中提出来的一个例子。

从例组13-3可以看出：各例句中所形成的事物只有形式上的变化而性质上没有变，亦即事物的出处是明显的。

- 4) Of 具有 from 和 out of 的双重性，并且组成意义：
of ZC → 由或从 ZC (ZC15)

例组 13-4

1. We make bottles (out) of glass.
2. This machine part is made (out) of plastics.
3. That cloth was woven of silk and nylon.
4. Concrete is made of cement, sand, and gravel mixed with water.
5. He was born of a artists' family.
6. I have rented a room of (or from) a neighbour.
7. He learned his English of (or from) an American.
8. He asked his way home of a hunter.

译文 13-4

1. 我们由玻璃制成瓶子。
2. 这一机器部件是由塑料制成的。
3. 那料子是由真丝和尼龙混纺成的。
4. 混凝土是由水泥, 沙子, 和碎石并和以水混合而成的。
5. 他出生于一个艺术家的家庭。
6. 我已经从一邻店那里租下了一间房子。
7. 他是从一个美国人那里学习了他的英语。
8. 他从猎人那里问了他回家的路。

从例组13-4可以看出: 例句1和2都联系原料, 同时又符合形变而质未变的条件, 所以of与out of可以通用,(也可以说of是out of的简略); 例句3和4表明多种原料所组成, 性质虽没有变, 但须用of突出组成; 例句6~8指事物的由来, of与from可以通用。

13.2 判别的原型

这是指事物的判断和辨别都有一定的其它事物作为参考, 所用介词为from。从原文的介词词组来说:

from ZC—→从ZC判断或辨别 (ZC11a)

但是, 判断的参考是一种依据, 上式完全可以适用; 而辨别常是两个方面的差异程度, 译文中常在这两者之间用“与”来表明它们的区别。

例组 13-5

1. What do you infer from his remarks?
2. From what I have heard he must be an honest

man.

3. From his looks you might suppose him to be strong.
4. She knew from his face that she was out of danger.
5. Can you tell a dog from a wolf?
6. You should distinguish good from evil.
7. The new plan is quite different from the old.
8. Is her position much different from ours?

译文 13-5

1. 从他的言谈中你可以推断出什么?
2. 从我所听到的来说他一定是个诚实的人。
3. 从他的外表看你也许认为他是健壮的。
4. 她从他的面部表情认识到她已脱离危险。
5. 你能否从狼辨认一条狗?
6. 你应当明辨善恶。
7. 这新的方案与旧的大不相同。
8. 她的处境与我们的有很大的差别吗?

从例组13-5中可以看出, 例句1~4属于判断; 例句6~8属于辨别; 例句5则为它们的分水岭。

13.3 脱离的原状

这里脱离包括离开, 消除, 免掉, 失去, 等等。所用介词为from, off, out of 三个; 它们之间有些区别, 但都表明事物从原来状态脱离。

- 1) From偏重于事物的脱离:

例组 13-6

1. What do you advise for removing grease from clothes?
2. Do you know there is a page missing from the book?
3. This money will free us from the debts.
4. No one could extricate him from difficulty.
5. He will not shrink from danger.
6. They rescued her from drowning.
7. Let us remove all doubts from our mind.
8. No possibility was precluded from our thought.

译文 13-6

1. 你怎样指教从衣服上除掉油渍?
2. 你知道有一页从那本书里遗漏了吗!
3. 这笔钱可以使我们从所有债务中脱身。
4. 没有人能够使他从困难中摆脱出来。
5. 他不会从危险中退缩出来。
6. 他们把她从溺水中救了起来。
7. 让我们从思想上消除一切疑惑。
8. 没有一种可能性已从我们考虑中予以排除。

例组 13-7

1. They dwelt apart from other people.
2. His account departed from the facts.

3. They were alienated from their purpose.
4. The action was an aberration from normal.
5. All men over sixty are excused from service.
6. The road was cleared from obstruction.
7. He was relieved from duty last week.

译文 13-7

1. 他们离群独居。
2. 他的说明已偏离了事实。
3. 他们已偏离了他们的目的。
4. 那行动已属于离经判道。
5. 所有六十岁以上的人得以免除服役。
6. 那道路已被清除了障碍。
7. 他是上星期被换下班的。

比较两个例组，我们可以看出：例组 13-6 都引用式 (ZC11a)，而例组 13-7 则由于与其它词类的搭配而按所搭配的词意译，这种译法上的灵活可随时随句掌握。

2) Off 偏重于事物的失去和掉下：

off ZC → 从 ZC 失去 (ZC13a)

例组 13-8

1. Half of what he said was off the subject.
2. The book will be off the press soon.
3. I wish to get these goods off my hands.
4. Our troops fought off the attack.
5. He is off head for pride.

6. He was knocked off his balance.
7. He does not wear uniform while off duty.
8. I have got him off drink now.

译文 13-8

1. 他所说的有一半已脱离了那题目。
2. 那本书很快就要出版了。
3. 我愿意把这些货物立即脱手。
4. 我们的部队已打退了袭击。
5. 他因骄傲而失去了理智。
6. 他被撞击而失去了平衡。
7. 他下班时不穿制服。
8. 我现在已使他戒掉了酒。

3) Out of偏重于出处。

out of ZC → 从ZC出去

(ZC14a)

例组 13-9

1. He has torn a leaf out of his notebook.
2. It is hard to get a word out of them.
3. He is completely out of debts now.
4. He helped me out of my difficulties.
5. It's a dishonest plot and I'm glad to be out of it.

译文 13-9

1. 他已从他的笔记本上撕去了一页。
2. 要从他们嘴里掏出一句话是不容易的。

3. 他现在已从一切债务中脱身了。
4. 他帮助我从我的困难中摆脱出来。
5. 这是个不正直的计谋而我幸亏脱身事外。

13.4 被阻的原来活动

这里所谓被阻是指制止，解除，放弃以及类似意义的词，而这里的ZC是原来可能有的活动，而已不是什么来源。在英语中，以原来的活动作为出发点而仍用from, out of和of来表达事物的被阻；但在汉语中这种说法极少见，亦即很难再用“从，由”等介词来表达了。此外，在这一用法中，英语介词已与动词有一定的搭配，各句汉译可按各自的谓语进行。

1) From 偏重制止和阻碍以及防止和避免，分别列入下面的两个例组：

例组 13-10

1. I cannot keep from laughing.
2. Failure did not deter her from trying again.
3. I tried to dissuade him from resigning.
4. Please cease from troubling us.
5. Nothing prevents him from leaving if he wishes.
6. He was inhibited from doing as he wishes.
7. Please refrain from smoking in the library.

译文 13-10

1. 我无法忍住不笑。(以免不笑)
2. 失败没有吓住她不再尝试。

3. 我想方设法劝阻他不要辞职。
4. 请不要再打扰我们。
5. 只要他愿意, 没有什么可以阻止他不离开。
6. 他已被制止不再做他随心所欲的事情。
7. 请不要在图书馆里抽烟。

例组 13-11

1. He defended her from the attack of a dog.
2. The trenches sheltered the soldiers from enemy's fire.
3. An umbrella protects us from rain.
4. They screened their faces from the fire with masks.
5. Intense cold preserves the food from decay.
6. The parents screened their son's fault from blame.
7. He tries to conceal his poverty from his friends.

译文 13-11

1. 他保护了她以免狗的袭击。
 2. 战壕保护了士兵以躲避敌人的炮火。
 3. 雨伞可以让我们挡雨。
 4. 他们以面罩遮护面部以免火灼。
 5. 高度低温可以保存食物以免腐败。
 6. 父母庇护了他们儿子的过失以避免谴责。
 7. 他试图掩盖他的贫穷以免他的朋友知道。
- 2) Out of 偏重放弃和逃避等来否定原来的意图, 前

面的动词则表达了实现这种否定的手段，如说服，欺骗，恐吓等，分别列入下面两个例组。

例组 13-12

1. We reassured him out of fear.
2. I talked her out of her resolution.
3. They cheated him out of ¥ 100.
4. You can not frighten him out of his duty.
5. You can not laugh me out of my belief.
6. He was compelled to go out of business.
7. He hoped to get out of doing the washing.

译文 13-12

1. 我们一再叫他放心不要怕。
2. 我已说服她放弃她的决定。
3. 他们欺骗了他拿走一百元钱。
4. 你无法恐吓他放弃他的责任。
5. 你无法嘲笑我放弃我的信仰。
6. 他被迫放弃了他的事业。
7. 他曾希望逃避做那洗濯工作。

这一否定含义还可以引伸为“不到，不及”。

例组 13-13

1. We're out of reach of the railway here.
2. I've been out of touch with him lately.
3. The car dashed away and was soon out of sight.
4. The question he asked was out of my knowledge.

5. It's a dishonest plot and I'm glad to be out of it.
6. The matter is out of my hand.
7. The naughty boys are quite out of hand.
8. The matter needs to be dealt with out of hand.

译文 13-13

1. 我们这里是铁路线达不到的。
2. 我最近已经同他联系不上。
3. 那车子疾驰而去并且一下子就看不到了。
4. 他所问的问题已不是我的知识所能及。
5. 这是个欺骗的计谋而我幸亏置身事外。
6. 那事情已不在我的手中。
7. 那些淘气的孩子是相当难以管教的。
8. 那事情需要立即予以应付。

3) Of 在这一用法中接近于 out of, 有时它们可以通用。

例组 13-14

1. You should ease your father of his burden.
2. Her song relieved me of my fatigue.
3. The nurse heeled me of my wound.
4. How was he rid himself of his bad habits?
5. You must clear your mind of doubts.
6. They stripped him of his clothes.
7. The pickpocket robbed the lady of her pures.

译文 13-14

1. 你应该让你父亲减轻他的负担。
2. 她的歌声使我解除了我的疲劳。
3. 那护士治愈了我的创伤。
4. 他是怎样使自己革除了他的坏习惯的?
5. 你必须消除你心中的疑虑。
6. 他们剥去了他的衣服。
7. 那扒手偷去了那妇女的钱包。

在这一节中我们已遇到了不少介词与动词, 形容词和别的搭配, 这些问题以后将专章予以讨论。

练习 13-1

择优填入from, off, out of, of各介词, 并汉译下列各句。

1. It is a difficult task ... my power.
2. You cannot stop people ... talking.
3. You cannot laugh ... the evidence.
4. The president was deprived ... his political power.
5. He hid the paper ... the searchers.
6. They demand an answer ... me.
7. ... all the people present only two were for it.
8. The responsibility is now ... his shoulders.
9. We should learn ... our elders who have more experiences.
10. His hat was ... shape after the rain.
11. He comes ... duty at 5 p. m. .

12. He was released ... obligation.
13. We must be good at stripping them ... their disguise.
14. He realized that the only way ... this situation was to return to the mainland.
15. What we have said here is ... the record.
16. They dissuaded him ... making the attempt.
17. She managed to restrain him ... taking such a foolish step.
18. The poor fellow went ... his mind.
19. We should not be ... guard.
20. No medicine can cure a man ... discontent.

13.5 原因

原因包括主观动机和客观原因。所用介词有：at, by, for, from, of, on, out of, over, through, with等简单介词以及若干复合介词和双重组合介词。有些介词既可以表达主观动机，也可以表达客观原因；有些只用于客观原因，而另一些只用于动机。此外，各介词表达原因的方式也各有所长，但总的说来：

from, etc. ZC → 由于/出于/因 ZC (ZC26)

1) From既可表达动机，也可表达原因

例组 13-15

1. The boy obeyed from fear.
2. He acted from a sense of duty, not from kindness.

3. He is true only from selfish motive.
4. He worked hard from the desire to please his parents.
5. He fell sick from drinking dirty water.
6. He is now suffering from influenza.
7. He suffers from a great loss in business.
8. The corps are suffering from want of water.
9. The two explorers died from exposure to the cold.

译文 13-15

1. 那男孩出于害怕而服从了。
2. 他出于责任感而采取了行动，并不是出于好意。
3. 他只是出于自私的动机才是忠实的。
4. 他出于使他双亲高兴的需要才努力工作的。
5. 他由于喝了脏水而病倒了。
6. 他现在因流感而病了。
7. 他因事业上的较大损失而受苦。
8. 那些庄稼因缺水而受灾。
9. 那两个探险家因暴露于严寒而死去。

上面例组中前四句表达动机，后五句表达客观原因。

2) Of与from相似，主客观都可用；但用得较少，特别是动机。

例组 13-16

1. You need not be ashamed of your poverty.
2. He is weary of doing nothing.

3. He is weary of doing all day.
4. He died of a heart attack.
5. She died of grief.
6. He did it of his own accord.

译文 13-16

1. 你不必为了你贫穷而感到羞愧。
 2. 他因无所事事而感到厌烦。
 3. 他因终日工作而觉得疲倦。
 4. 他由于心脏病而死去。
 5. 她因扰伤而死。
 6. 他出于自愿而把它做了。
- 3) Through也可用于主客观原因。

例组 13-17

1. They say such thing through kindness.
2. She concealed the fact through shame.
3. It was all through you that we were late.
4. He became ill through over work.
5. She catches cold through her own fault.
6. The business was ruined through mismanagenent.
7. We lost ourselves through not knowing the way.
8. The accident happened through no fault of yours.

译文 13-17

1. 他们是出于好意说着那样事情的。
2. 她出于羞愧隐瞒了那事实。

3. 这完全由于你而使我们都迟了。
4. 他由于过度工作而病了。
5. 她由于自己的过失而着了凉。
6. 那事业因管理不善而遭到失败。
7. 我们由于不认识路而迷途了。
8. 那事故并不由于你的过失而产生的。

4) With 用于主客观原因。其中情绪上的主观原因往往与反应并发(伴随), 所以常以“ZC得”代替“因ZC”。

例组 13-18

1. His face was red with rage.
2. I am quite faint with hunger.
3. The small boy trembled with fear.
4. His eyes were shining with excitement.
5. Hearing the news, he is mad with joy.
6. She trembled with anxiety and fear.
7. His eyes were tired with too much reading.
8. I have been ill with a cold.
9. I was intrigued with his unusual speech.
10. One shouldn't be satisfied with only a little success.

译文 13-18

1. 他的脸气得发紫。
2. 我饿得十分发慌。
3. 那小男孩吓得发抖。
4. 他的眼睛兴奋得闪闪发光。

5. 听到了那消息，他高兴得发狂。
 6. 她因担忧和害怕而发抖。
 7. 他的眼睛因阅读过多而感到疲倦。
 8. 我因受凉已经病倒了。
 9. 我因他那不平常的演讲而感到惊奇。
 10. 一个人不应该只因一点小成就而感到满足。
- 5) Out of 用于主观动机

例组 13-19

1. He asked only out of curiosity.
2. He did it out of kindness.
3. She obeyed out of fear.
4. They helped us out of pity.
5. It was done out of mischief.

译文 13-19

1. 他只出于好奇心而询问。
2. 他出于好意而把它做了。
3. 她出于害怕而服从了。
4. 他出于同情心而帮助我们。
5. 这出于恶作剧而那样做了。

6) At 用于客观原因，其中不少是属于感官上的刺激，而情绪上的反应也是即时的，所以常可用“一看/听/想到 ZC”代替“因 ZC”。

例组 13-20

1. She was sick at the sight of blood.

2. I've been very excited at the thought of it.
3. He became angry at the mere suggestion of such a thing.
4. At his command the policemen burst open the door.
5. She was terrified at the noise in the night.
6. He was disappointed at his friend's behaviour.
7. I have called to see you at the request of a friend.
8. He became impatient at the frequent delay.

译文 13-20

1. 她一看到血就感到恶心。
2. 我一想到它就非常兴奋。
3. 他只要一听到提出那样的事情就大发其怒。
4. 一听到他的命令警察立即撞开了那扇门。
5. 她在夜间一听到声响总感到害怕。
6. 他已由于他朋友的行为感到失望。
7. 我是应一个朋友的要求来访问你的。
8. 他已因屡次推迟感到不耐烦。

7) By 用于客观原因, 要注意的是这种句子与被动语态相似, 要把作为原因或理由的宾语与用于 ZD 作为主动因素分清楚。

例组 13-21

1. He was identified by the scar on his face.
2. His speech was marked by his great eloquence.

3. He was frightened by the oncoming train.
4. I am honoured by your confidence in me.
5. He was qualified by long experience in his work.
6. He failed by playing all the time.
7. They were united by their common peril.
8. The group was divided by serious difference.

译文 13-21

1. 他是由于脸上的那块疤而得到辨认的。
2. 他的演讲由于他的非凡口才而引人注目。
3. 他是由于迎面而来的火车而受惊。
4. 我由于你对我的信任而感到荣幸。
5. 他是由于他工作中的长期经验而被录取。
6. 他由于老在玩耍而没有及格。
7. 他们由于他们的共同风险而联合起来了。
8. 那团体由于严重分歧而分裂了。

8) For 用于两种客观原因：(1)为了某种缘故使事物采取行动，但不要与目的混淆；(2)因或以某种原因而使事物受到奖惩或著名。

例组 13-22

1. I beg your pardon for coming in like that.
2. Thank you for what you have done.
3. They were equipped for a long journey.
4. They gathered for a common object.
5. The script was adapted for television.
6. He travelled for the good of his health.

7. I tremble for my son's safety.
8. Peace is requisite for stable development.

译文 13-22

1. 我为了那样就闯了进来请你原谅。
2. 我为了你所作所为而感谢你。
3. 他们为了长途旅行已准备好行装。
4. 他们为了共同的目的已集合在一起了。
5. 那剧本手稿是为了电视而改编的。
6. 他为了有益于他的健康而旅行。
7. 我为了我儿子的安全而心惊肉跳。
8. 为了稳定发展和平是必要的。

例组 13-32

1. She is renowned for her wit and beauty.
2. China is famous for its handicrafts.
3. His mother shed tears for joy at seeing him.
4. He hung down his head for shame.
5. He was dismissed for neglecting his work.
6. He was rewarded for saving the child's life.
7. You will suffer for your wickedness some day.
8. I felt no regret for what I have done.

译文 13-23

1. 她以才貌双全而闻名。
2. 中国是以它的手工艺品而著称。
3. 他的母亲一见到他因高兴而流下泪来。

4. 他因羞愧而低下了头。
5. 他因忽视了他的工作而被撤职。
6. 他因救了那孩子的性命而受到奖赏。
7. 你总有一天会因你的邪恶而受罪。
8. 我不会因我所作所为而感到后悔。
- 9) On用于客观原因和依据:

例组 13-24

1. I have done all this on your account.
2. He had to see a friend on business.
3. I congratulate you on such excellent result.
4. The two men were arrested on a charge of treason.
5. I am sure he did it on purpose.
6. I engaged him on your recommendation.
7. He was excused on the score of illness.
8. He declined on the ground of previous engagement.

译文 13-24

1. 我已经为了你做了这一切。
2. 他为了公事不得不去看一个朋友。
3. 我为了这样一个优异的成果向你祝贺。
4. 那两个人已因叛国罪而被捕。
5. 我肯定他是有意做的。
6. 我是根据你的推荐而雇用了他。
7. 他由于生病而免于到场。

8. 他以早有约会为理由而拒绝了。

10) Over用于客观原因, 引起情绪的表现,

例组 13-25

1. We laugh over his foolish operation.
2. They rejoiced over the glorious victory.
3. She gloated over her son's achievement.
4. She is so foolish as to cry over a mere trifle.
5. He greives over his misfortune.
6. She wept over her sad fate.
7. They quarrelled over some political questions.
8. We talked over his plans for the future.

译文 13-25

1. 我们因他的笨拙操作而大笑。
2. 他们因辉煌的胜利而欢欣鼓舞。
3. 她因她儿子的成就而心花怒放。
4. 她是那样傻以致为了一点小事而大哭。
5. 他因自己的不幸而悲伤。
6. 她因自己悲痛的命运而哭泣。
7. 他们为了一些政治问题而争吵了。
8. 我们为了他的前途安排而商谈了。

11) 最后我们还有若干复合介词(例组13-26)和双重组合介词(例组13-27), 它们都是专用的。

because of, etc. → 因/由于 ZC (ZC26)

例组 13-26

1. We had to drive very slowly because of the fog.
2. He was late because of an accident.
3. He lost his job because of his age.
4. We like him very much because of his good humour.
5. The accident was due to the negligence of the signalman.
6. The failure was due to an error of judgement.
7. The delay is due to the shortage of hands.
8. Due to the long drought the crops have failed.
9. That's a mistake owing to carelessness.
10. He is lame owing to a badly broken left leg.
11. Owing to rising cost, bus fares will be increased.
12. Owing to the weather the game had to be postponed.

译文 13-26

1. 因为有雾我们不得不非常慢地开车。
2. 他是因事故而迟到的。
3. 他是因年龄而失去了工作。
4. 由于他的动人幽默感，我们都十分喜欢他。
5. 那事故是由于信号员的疏忽。
6. 那失败是由于判断的错误。
7. 那延误是由于人手短缺。

8. 由于长期干旱庄稼歉收。
9. 那是个由于粗心的错误。
10. 他是由于严重骨折的左腿而跛的。
11. 由于物价上涨, 公共汽车票价将予以提高。
12. 由于气候, 球赛不得不予以推迟。

例组 13-27

1. On account of the weather, we had to cancel the outing.
2. We could not go on account of the rain.
3. Many accidents occurred on account of icy road.
4. He was discharged from the army on account of his health.
5. You must do your best in view of the importance of the matter.
6. In view of your statement, I assume you don't agree with us.
7. In the view of the magistrate, the offence was not a serious one.
8. We won the victory by virtue of hard fighting.
9. He got the job by virtue of his superior qualification.
10. That actor achieved his fame by virtue of his skill.

译文 13-27

1. 由于气候, 我们不得不取消那次出游。

2. 我们因雨没有去成。
3. 不少车祸是由于道路结冰的情况下发生的。
4. 由于他的健康状况, 他从陆军中被解职。
5. 由于那事情的重要性你必须尽力而为之。
6. 鉴于你的申述, 我认为你并不同意我们。
7. 在法官的观点方面, 那罪行并不是个严重的。
8. 我们由于奋力战斗而赢得了胜利。
9. 他是由于他的优越资格而得到了那工作。
10. 那演员是由于他的技能而赢得了他的名声。

练习 13-2

择优填入用于原因各介词, 并汉译下列各句。

1. The pupils marvelled ... the extent of her knowledge.
2. He escaped punishment ... confessing everything.
3. He gave up the plan ... wanting of money.
4. Thousands of children today are dying ... lack of food.
5. He was proud ... his success.
6. ... what ground do you object?
7. I helped the poor child ... pity.
8. He did it entirely ... the anger of the moment.
9. The people seethed ... discontent.
10. He was crying ... his misfortunes.
11. ... the bad weather, I came here too late.
12. The event was canceled ... inclement weather.
13. The train arrived late ... the snowstorm.

14. ... your statement, I assume you don't agree with us.
15. The professor was honored ... his profound knowledge.
16. It was a crops failure ... natural causes.
17. Aren't you glade ... the news of his recovery?
18. He died ... drowning.
19. You should apologize ... your rudeness.
20. Many people smoke ... habit.
21. You should be ashamed ... what you have done.
22. All this was done ... envy.
23. She gloates ... her achievement.
24. It was all ... your being late that we missed the train.
25. The teachers were pleased ... the student's progress.
26. She blushed ... his many compliments.
27. The girl's absence is ... illness.
28. It was ... the job that he had moved to the new house.
29. He begged to be excused ... ignorance.
30. ... our joint efforts, the task was fulfilled ahead of schedule.

第十四章 来龙去脉(下)

所谓去脉，总的说来，是指待人接物；其中包括的内容可以很多，凡事物存在或发生的结局落实在另一方面的人、事、物上的都属于这一用法，兹分述于本章各节。为了便于初步掌握这一章的概念，我们用一个“及”字来概括这一章各介词的释意，并即“及人”，“及物”和“及事”；而这里的宾语一人事物可以归结为事物所及的“终端”。

14.1 对待人

这里我们是指事物的存在或发生是以人（包括少量人事）为终端，如受主，对象，归宿等。所用介词有 to, before 和 on。

1) To 用于空间时意为“到达”XC，在人世间可以概括为“及于”ZC，而在这里它的介词词组为：

to ZC → 对或向 ZC (ZC16)

在终端为具体受主时，我们用“给”代替“对人授予”。

例组 14-1

1. Children should always be polite to others.
2. He didn't pay any respect to the teachers.
3. The decision was favourable to our team.
4. The proposition should be clear to everyone.
5. It doesn't matter to me whether he'll come.

6. will it be all right to you if I come again tomorrow?
7. He left his whole estate to the people.
8. we should render honour to our heroes.
9. The teacher imparted knowledge to his pupils.
10. His resignation may prove advantage to our party.

译文 14-1

1. 儿童对别人总是应当有礼貌的。
2. 他对老师一点也不尊敬。
3. 那决定对我队是有利的。
4. 那主张对每个人应当是清楚的。
5. 他来还是不来对我无关紧要。
6. 要是我明天再来对你是不是方便的?
7. 他把他的全部财产遗留给人民。
8. 我们应该把荣誉授给我们的英雄。
9. 那老师把知识传授给他的学生。
10. 他的辞职也许给我们的党带来好处。

例组 14-2

1. They tried to explain matters to him.
2. He turned to me in his great need.
3. Why didn't you confide the secret to me?
4. Have you ever mention this to your father?
5. Opportunity for advancement is open to all.
6. The witness identified the suspect to the jury.

7. Give my best regard to your mother.
8. Our duty is to hold ourselves responsible to the people.

译文 14-2

1. 他们已设法把事情向他解释。
2. 他在迫切需要时向我求助。
3. 你为什么没有把秘密向我吐露?
4. 你有否向你父亲提起过这件事?
5. 发展的机会是向所有的人敞开的。
6. 那证人向陪审团指认了那个嫌疑犯。
7. 请向你的母亲问候。
8. 我们的责任是要我们向人民负责。

2) on 在12.1节中是指事物向对象采取行动, 属于方向性, 即向ZC, 而在这里则指事物落实到对象上, 即

on ZC → (落实)到ZC (ZC2a)

例组 14-3

1. The next round of drink is on me.
2. The medicine had no effect on him.
3. All these hard works are telling on him.
4. He laid all the blames upon others for that accident.
5. They bestowed praise on the boy.
6. It is libel on art and artists.
7. They are in attention upon the invalids.

8. You can count on him because he is a reliable man.
9. He pinned his hope on a speedy recovery.
10. You must not build too much on his promise.
11. They reckoned on getting help from us.
12. You can bank on my being there.

译文 14-3

1. 下一轮酒算在我帐上。
2. 那药物在他身上不起作用。
3. 所有这些艰苦工作正在他身上显示出来。
4. 他把那次事故的一切过失全推在别人身上。
5. 他们把表扬加在男孩们身上。
6. 这是对艺术和艺术家的侮辱。
7. 他们把关心放在残废人身上。
8. 你可以信赖他，因为他是个可靠的人。
9. 他把希望寄托在迅速恢复上。
10. 你一定不要过份指望他的承诺。
11. 他们指望从我们这里得到帮助。
12. 你可以指望我会在那里。

3) Before用于时间意为“在YB以前”，在这里转意为“面向”或“在ZC面前”

before ZC → 面向ZC

(ZC9)

例组 14-4

1. He was nervous before the audience.
2. The accused stood before the court.

3. The coward retreated before the enemy.
4. You are young men with the world before you.
5. The president praised the boy before the whole school.
6. Your suggestion will be placed before the committee.

译文 14-4

1. 他面向听众感到紧张。
2. 那被告面向法庭站着。
3. 那胆小鬼在敌人面前退却了。
4. 你们都是有远大前程的年轻人。
5. 那校长在全校师生面前表扬了那少年。
6. 你的建议将被交到委员会面前。

14.2 及事及物——结果

这是指事物的存在或发生已进行到新的项目或预定的程度，以及变化成新的事物；它们都可看成是结果。我们有下列几个介词。

1) To 表达事物已进行到新的境界或改变成为新的状态，分别示于例组14-5和例组14-6。介词词组概括为：

to ZC → 达到/成为ZC (ZC16a)

例组 14-5

1. The committee proceeded to the next item.
2. The mother sings the child to sleep.

3. Please speak to the point.
4. That would be a blow to his prestige.
5. Did I put you to inconvenience?
6. What he did put us all to shame.
7. The evidence links him to the criminal.
8. The traitor was condemned to death.

译文 14-5

1. 那委员会已进行到下一个项目。
2. 那母亲唱着歌催孩子入睡。
3. 请你说话讲到点子上。
4. 那会使他的威信受到打击。
5. 我是否已使你感到不方便?
6. 他所作所为使我们都受到耻辱。
7. 那证据把他联系到罪犯。
8. 那叛徒已被判处了死刑。

例组 14-6

1. The rain has changed to hail.
2. The temperature rose to 30°C.
3. This led to the price soaring.
4. The train slowed down to a halt.
5. Many ancient cities have now crumbled to dust.
6. We must put these old stuffs to good use.
7. The situation reduced him to despair.
8. The patient was restored to health.

译文 14-6

1. 那雨已变成为冰雹。
2. 那温度已上升到摄氏30°。
3. 这导致物价的飞涨。
4. 那列火车已减慢下来一直到停。
5. 许多古老城市现已沦为尘埃。
6. 我们必须把这些破旧废品尽量得到利用。
7. 那情况已使他变成绝望。
8. 那病人已恢复到健康。

2) Into 表达事物以各种方式进入某种状态或活动, 如例组14-7所示, 其中最后两句属于与动词的搭配而失去 into 的译意; into 还表达事物变成、合成或分成的成品和结果, 如例组14-8所示。概括说来

into ZC → 进入/变成ZC (ZC18)

例组 14-7

1. A new topic was introduced into the discussion.
2. They breathed new life into the plan.
3. He plunged into the task he had set himself.
4. He entered into the discussion with great zest.
5. Man is liable to fall into error.
6. He thinks running into debt is dreadful.
7. He forced her into confession.
8. He was tricked into signing the contract.

译文 14-7

1. 一个新的题目已被引进了讨论。
2. 他们把新的生命灌注进了那计划。
3. 他全力投入了自己所规定的任务。
4. 他以极大的热忱加入了那讨论。
5. 人是免不掉要犯错误的。
6. 他认为陷入债务是可怕的。
7. 他强迫她供认。
8. 他被诱骗而签订了合同。

例组 14-8

1. When the raindrops freeze into hard little balls, we call that hail.
2. A steam engine transforms heat into energy.
3. Translate this passage into English.
4. He was led away by bad companions into crime.
5. Some caterpillars grow into butterflies.
6. Flour is made into bread.
7. The equator divides the earth into two hemispheres.
8. The question was resolved into its elements.
9. The statue was broken into several pieces.
10. The notes blend into a harmonious music.

译文 14-8

1. 雨点冻结成为小硬球时，我们称之为冰雹。

2. 蒸汽机把热量转换成为能量。
3. 把这一段文章翻译成为英语。
4. 他被坏的伙伴勾引成为罪犯。
5. 有些毛虫生长成为蝴蝶。
6. 面粉可以制成为面包。
7. 赤道把地球划分成为两个半球。
8. 那问题已被分解成为它的各个因素。
9. 那塑像已打烂成为若干碎片。
10. 那些音符汇合成为调和的音乐。

3) Up to 在这里用来表明达到标准, 能够胜任, 轮到或该由谁行动(及人):

up to ZC → 达到/轮到 ZC (ZC19)

例组 14-9

1. This article does not come up to standard.
2. I don't feel up to the job.
3. None of the competitors won a prize, as none was up to the mark.
4. Do you feel up to making a speech in class?
5. It is up to you to decide when we will start.
6. It is up to you to look after the children.
7. It is up to you to do your best.

译文 14-9

1. 这篇文章没有达到标准。
2. 我感到不能胜任那任务。
3. 没有一个竞赛者赢得了奖品, 因为没有一个人够得上标

准。

4. 你感到能够在班上讲一次话吗?
5. 这该由你来决定我们什么时候出发。
6. 现在轮到你来照看孩子们。
7. 这该由你来尽力而为之。

14.3 符合和比拟于

这是指事物的存在或发生是符合一定的规律或近似某种现象；介词to依赖动词的搭配来表达这种意义。

to ZC → 符合/比拟ZC (ZC16b)

分别列入例组14-10, 14-11和14-12。

例组 14-10

1. Every citizen should be obedient to the law.
2. A man should adhere to his principle.
3. Of course I must bow to the committee's decision.
4. All the parts were machined to the specification.
5. The illustrations were drawn to scale.
6. The minority is subordinate to the majority.
7. We are accustomed to hard work.
8. We must all adjust to the changing conditions.
9. She yielded to her children's entreaties.

译文 14-10

1. 每个公民都应当是遵守法律的。
2. 一个人应当坚持他的原则
3. 当然我必须服从那委员会的决定。
4. 所有部件都按照规格予以加工的。

5. 那些插图都按照比例尺予以绘制的。
6. 少数服从多数。
7. 我们已习惯于艰苦的工作。
8. 我们大家都必须适应各种变化着的情况。
9. 她对她孩子的要求让了步。

例组 14-11

1. His account corresponds to the actual events.
2. The results are counter to our hope.
3. The supply is not adequate to the demand.
4. He was hostile to any change in our plan.
5. They are dancing to the music of an accordion.
6. This policy was a great disappointment to the public.
7. A mistake now would be fatal to our success.

译文 14-11

1. 他说的符合各实际事件。
2. 那些结果都违背了我们的希望。
3. 供应够不上需求（供不应求）。
4. 他反对我们计划中的任何改变。
5. 他们正合着那手风琴的乐曲在跳舞。
6. 这一政策对公众是大失所望。
7. 现在的一着错误对我们的成功将是致命的。

例组 14-12

1. Life is compared to an act of the stage.

2. We often liken the heart to a pump.
3. He is quite rich now to what he used to be.
4. The Chinese Youth won the match by 3 to 1.
5. This is equal to saying that he is a fool.
6. Their custom is quite similar to ours.
7. It is much superior to what I expected.
8. She is seven years junior to me.
9. I prefer working to doing nothing.

译文 14-12

1. 人生可以比之于舞台上的一出戏。
2. 我们常把心脏比拟为水泵。
3. 比起他原先的情况他如今已相当富裕了。
4. 中国青年队以三比一胜了那场比赛。
5. 这等于说他是个笨蛋。
6. 他们的风俗习惯是十分相似于我们的。
7. 这比我所预料的要好得多。
8. 她比我年轻七岁。
9. 我宁愿干活要比无所事事为好。

14.4 附属于

这里指事物的存在或发生是属于一定的对象或附属于某种类别。我们有下面两个介词。

1) To与动词结合构成：

to ZC → 属于ZC

(ZC16c)

例组 14-13

1. The land belongs to the government.
2. The question pertains to chemistry.
3. Your remark is irrelevant to the question.
4. That's the key to solving the problem.
5. There are two sides to every question.
6. I have finished the introduction to the play.
7. There is no index to the book.
8. I must ascribe your behaviour to ill will.

译文 14-13

1. 那土地是属于政府的。
2. 那问题是属于化学方面的。
3. 你的意见对那问题是无关的。
4. 那就是对解答那问题的关键。
5. 对每个问题都有两面性。
6. 我已写完了那剧本的序言。
7. 没有索引附于那本书后。
8. 我必须把你的行为归之于恶意。

2) Under在第十一章是“在之下”，在这里：

under ZC → 归入ZC下

(ZC5)

例组 14-14

1. A man is classed under the category of mammal.
2. Cups and saucers come under crockery.
3. The subject was treated under four heads.

4. The subject will be treated under "preposition".
5. You will find these two works listed under "biography".

译文 14-14

1. 人是归入哺乳动物类的范围内。
2. 杯盘属于陶器类。
3. 那问题是分在四个项目下予以讨论。
4. 那问题将在“介词”项下予以讨论。
5. 你可以在列入“传记”项下找到这两篇著作。

练习 14-1

择优填入介词：to, into, up to, before, on和under, 并汉译下列各句：

1. We have a good day's work...us.
2. We must put this...good use.
3. All this helped him to develop...an able author.
4. Would you apply that rule...everyone?
5. These two courses had been a great strain...her.
6. Don't twist what I say...something I don't mean.
7. The struggle has steeled them...staunch fighters.
8. Traffic was brought...a complete stop.
9. Rabbits come...animals.
10. We soon put the enemy...flight.
11. One of the pills will put you...sleep in a little while.
12. How did you succeed in getting the plant...oper-

ation?

13. The new precision machine tools are...advanced levels.
14. Her devotion...her mother was beyond words.
15. The exhibition will be open...the public from 9 a.m.
16. They tried to trap us...making mistakes.
17. He wanted to show off...them.
18. He seemed able to put complicated thoughts...simple words.
19. None of the things they said were new...us.
20. All the parts were machined...specification.
21. He couldn't keep his mind...his study.
22. That year large numbers of enterprises went...bankruptcy.
23. We examined him in French and found him quite ... the mark.
24. Our women's team won by three...zero.
25. This victory scared the enemy...fleeing toward the sea.
26. You were a bad influence...the other boys.
27. This new book of Green's isn't...his last.
28. They are dancing...the music of an accordion.
29. A walk of ten kilometers is nothing...him.
30. This law went...force on January 1, 1982.

14.5 从事于

这是指事物在对ZC进行活动, 所用介词有at, about, on, up to; 总起来说是从事于ZC, 但也有一些差别。

1) About用于着手处理有关事情:

about ZC→处理有关ZC (ZC21)

例组 14-15

1. What are you about?
2. Mind what you are about!
3. I do not like to be interrupted when I am about an important piece of work.
4. Do you know how to go about it?
5. He went about his work as if nothing had happened.
6. He promised to see about the matter.
7. Mother set about making coffee.
8. He set about the preparation with great energy.

译文 14-15

1. 你在干什么?
2. 注意你在干什么!
3. 我不喜欢在我从事一项重要工作时受到干扰。
4. 你知道怎样着手进行这工作吗?
5. 他着手进行他的工作好象什么事也没有发生。
6. 他已答应去照料那件事。
7. 母亲已在着手煮点咖啡。

8. 他已以极大的干劲着手作准备。

2) At表明忙于工作，而很少指明具体工作。

at ZC——忙于ZC

(ZC1a)

例组 14-16

1. What on earth are you at?
2. How long have you been at the work?
3. I must go and see what those children are at.
4. He has been at work since early morning.
5. We continued at work far into the night.
6. They are going at the task for all they were worth.
7. We kept at the job untill it was finished.
8. They laboured at the problem till midnight.

译文 14-16

1. 你到底在干什么？
2. 你从事这工作已有多久了？
3. 我必须去看看那些孩子在干什么。
4. 他从清早开始就一直在干活。
5. 我们不停地干那工作直到深夜。
6. 他们已尽了一切力量对付那任务。
7. 我们坚持那工作直到它得到完成。
8. 他们努力从事那问题直至午夜。

3) On表明致力于，它的‘接触’含义很浓，具体活动也比较明显：

on ZC——致力于ZC

(ZC2b)

例组 14-17

1. At that moment I was on a rather difficult piece of work.
2. They are intent on their work.
3. They were bent on completing the task.
4. She wastes much of her money on non-essentials.
5. Can you play on the piano?
6. He performed skilfully on the flute.

译文 14-17

1. 那时我正致力于一件相当困难的工作。
2. 他们都专心在他们的工作上。
3. 他们竭尽全力在完成那任务。
4. 她把她的许多钱浪费在非必需品上。
5. 你会不会弹钢琴?
6. 他熟练地吹奏了那笛子。

4) Up to 在这里主要用于搞恶作剧。

up to ZC → 搞ZC

ZC19a)

例组 14-18

1. What are you up to now?
2. What tricks has he been up to?
3. Go and see what those children are up to.
4. We're not clear yet just what they are up to.
5. What are you up to with that knife?

6. I don't know what foolery he might be up to.

译文 14-18

1. 现在你要干什么了?
2. 他搞了什么鬼把戏?
3. 去看一下那些小孩在搞什么。
4. 我们还不明白他们想搞什么名堂。
5. 你拿了那把刀想干啥?
6. 我不知道他会干出什么傻事。

14.6 关于

这是指事物的存在或发生是涉及到另一事物 ZC; 所用介词有: about, on, 以及几个专用介词。

About, etc. ZC → 关于 ZC (ZC27)

1) About在这里只笼统提到关于 ZC。

例组 14-19

1. What do you know about him?
2. I don't know anything about the girl.
3. I know nothing about music.
4. I have heard no news about him.
5. I have no doubt about the matter.
6. I learned something about how radios are made.
7. There is something queer about him.
8. There is something about him people like.
9. What are you two talking about?

10. He told me all about his life in China.
11. I forgot all about my appointment with you.
12. I have expressed my idea about this before.
13. Many young people think about nothing but pleasure.

译文 14-19

1. 关于他你知道点什么?
 2. 我不知道任何有关那姑娘的事情。
 3. 对于音乐我一窍不通。
 4. 我没听到有关他的消息。
 5. 关于那事情我没有一点怀疑。
 6. 我学了一些关于收音机是怎样制造的。
 7. 关于他的为人有些古怪。
 8. 他这个人有些讨人欢喜的地方。
 9. 你们两个在谈到了什么?
 10. 他告诉我一切有关他在中国的生活。
 11. 我完全忘记了关于同你的约会。
 12. 以前我已发表过我对于这问题的意见。
 13. 许多年轻人除了寻欢作乐外对什么也不关心。
- 2) On在这用法上表明它接触到有关问题的各方面:

例组 14-20

1. I have thought long upon the matter.
2. He mused upon the events of his long life.
3. Old people sometimes dwell on the past.
4. He sat there meditating upon his misfortunes.

5. People speculate on the issue of the battle.
6. He reflected carefully upon her remarks.
7. He is an authority on cotton cultivation.
8. He has become a lecturer on geology.
9. This is a treatise on economic problem.
10. We complimented her on having a son in the cabinet.
11. I want to speak to you on a very serious subject.
12. He asked me to write on the subject of peace.

译文 14-20

1. 我已对问题考虑了很久。
2. 他对他长长一生中的各事情沉思冥想。
3. 老年人有时细细回想着往事。
4. 他坐在那里沉思着他的不幸。
5. 人们对那战役的结局作着推测。
6. 他细心地回想着她的谈论。
7. 他是个棉花栽培问题上的权威。
8. 他已成为地质学的讲师。
9. 这是一篇关于经济问题的论文。
10. 我们对她有个儿子在内阁中祝贺了她。
11. 我要对你谈谈一个极为重要的问题。
12. 他要求我写一点关于和平问题的文章。

比较例组14-19与14-20, 我们看到 about 用于知道和通知等, 而on则用于思考和讨论等, 它们所涉及问题的深浅相当明显。

3) 专用介词有: concerning, regarding, respecting, as to, in regard of, in respect of, with regard to, with respect to; 概括说来, 它们的意义不外乎关于, 至于, 考虑到, 等等, 视句中全文而定。

用专用介词时意义比较明确, 所以它们大多用于正式文件, 在口语中则不及about和on那么常用。

例组 14-21

1. Please inform me concerning this matter.
2. What is your opinion concerning the economic situation?
3. We still have no information concerning his whereabouts.
4. This book deals with questions concerning China's liberation.
5. I asked him regarding his intentions.
6. I can give you no information regarding his whereabouts.
7. There he left strict instruction regarding the water supply.
8. We had quite a long discussion respecting the course to be adapted.
9. Problem respecting air pollution in city must be solved.
10. Respecting such matters little is known.
11. She had no doubt as to the correctness of her views.

12. They invited her in and questioned as to her ability.
13. He did not express any views as to the description of the young man.
14. As to the matter, I don't want to know at all.
15. We have good news in respect to your promotion.
16. In respect of the contents this essay is admissible.
17. We must have a talk with respect to that point.
18. He had nothing to say in regard to that matter.
19. With regard to our contention, the point is really slight.
20. In disregard of all difficulties, we fought it out to the end.

译文 14-21

1. 请你告诉我关于这件事情,
2. 你对于经济形势的意见是怎样的?
3. 我们还没有关于他下落的消息。
4. 这本书论述关于中国解放的各种问题。
5. 我问他关于他的意见。
6. 我无法给你提供关于他行踪的消息。
7. 那里他留下关于供水问题的严格指示。
8. 我们进行了应采取什么路线的长时间讨论。
9. 关于城市里空气污染的问题一定要予以解决。
10. 关于这样的问题可说一无所知。

11. 她对她的看法的正确性毫无怀疑。
12. 他们请了她进去并探问了有关她的能力。
13. 他没有表示对那年轻人模样的任何看法。
14. 对于那问题，我根本不想知道。
15. 我们得到有关你升级的好消息。
16. 对于内容来说，这篇文章是可以采纳的。
17. 我们必须进行关于那一问题的商谈。
18. 关于那件事他没有什么可说的。
19. 关于我们的争论，问题其实是微不足道的。
20. 不顾一切困难，我们已决战到底。

练习 14-2

择优填入从事于和关于各介词，并汉译下列各句：

1. Do you know how to go...it?
2. They are...work on a new invention.
3. She reflected for a moment...the word.
4. Those boys are always...mischief.
5. We have several disputes...religion.
6. Nothing more was said...the matter.
7. ...these facts, a special committee is to be appointed.
8. ...our contention, the point is really very slight.
9. We have nothing to say...that matter.
10. ...his lack of education, there is nothing he can do...it.
11. He asked my advice...what to do.
12. I can't think what you are...not to take their

13. They played...hide and seek round the house.
14. He couldn't keep his mind...his work.
15. What have you been...all day while I've been
away?
16. We mustn't be in a hurry...such things.
17. She asked me a few questions...how I felt.
18. How long have you been...this work?
19. He has become a lecturer...geology.
20. Then we went...our respective tasks.

第十五章 途径(上)

途径是指事物的存在或发生所采取的方法，所凭籍的手段，所通过的媒介，以及所伴随的人事物；在最后这一项中还包含所使用的工具，和同在一起的协作，和所带有事物的配合。其中大多相当明确地是通过某种途径，相当于空间用途中的通过某种路线，有些则与其它用法比较易于混淆，有待继续探讨。

15.1 主动因素

这是指事物的存在或发生是被某种因素所完成或由某种因素所促进，所用介词只有by一个，而句子构造全是被动语态，而介词宾语即为主动因素。这里我们有

by ZD → 被或由ZD (ZD17)

下面我们将‘被ZD’和‘由ZD’两种情况的例句分别列入例组15-1和15-2，它们没有本质上的区别，只是汉译有一字之差。此外，这里ZD也可以看作是一种特殊原因（参看例组13-17）。

例组 15-1

1. The bridge was carried away by the flood.
2. The city was destroyed by the earthquake.
3. The ground has been covered by snow since last week.

4. The window was broken by a flying stone.
5. The troops were encompassed by the enemy.
6. They were beaten by an excellent team.
7. The town was taken by force.
8. The boy has just been bitten by a snake.
9. The suspect was shadowed by a detective.
10. My brotner was betrayed by his friend.
11. He was not persuaded by our argument.
12. We could not help being moved by his words.

译文 15-1

1. 那座桥已被洪水冲走了。
2. 那城市已被地震所破坏。
3. 那大地自从上星期以来已经被雪所覆盖。
4. 那窗户是被一飞来的石块打碎的。
5. 那军队已被敌人所包围。
6. 他们已被一优秀球队所击败。
7. 那城镇已被武力所占领。
8. 那孩子刚被一条蛇咬了一下。
9. 那嫌疑犯已被侦探所跟踪。
10. 我的兄弟已被他的朋友所出卖。
11. 他没有被我们的论点所说服。
12. 我们无法避免不被他的言词所感动。

例组 15-2

1. America was discovered by Columbus.
2. That play was written by Luxin.

3. The reply made by him is foolish.
4. The statement was prepared by the students themselves.
5. The room is shared by the boys.
6. He was accompanied by my mother.
7. The events were confirmed by many witnesses.
8. The fellow recommended by the committee doesn't know me.
9. Good shoes are still made by hand.
10. This paper was supplied by their company.
11. His opinion was justified by events.
12. It is prohibited by law to smoke here.

译文 15-2

1. 美洲大陆是由哥伦布发现的。
2. 那个剧本是由鲁迅编写的。
3. 由他所作的答复是可笑的。
4. 那声明是由学生们自己所准备的。
5. 那房间是由几个男孩合用的。
6. 他由我的母亲陪伴着。
7. 那事件已由许多目击者所证实。
8. 由委员会推荐的那个人并不认识我。
9. 优质鞋子仍是由手工制造的。
10. 这种纸是由他们的公司提供的。
11. 他的意见已由事实证明正确。
12. 在这里抽烟是由法律所禁止的。

15.2 方 法

事物的存在或发生有时遵循一定的方法，用于方法的介词有下列几个，概括起来说：

by, etc. ZD → 按照 ZD (ZD25)

事物和方法都是多种多项的，译文中只能就事论事。

1) By 用于计量方法

例组 15-3

1. Eggs are sold by the dozen in U.S.A., by the catty here.
2. We buy gold by the ounce and coal by the ton.
3. This piping is sold by the meter.
4. We rent the house by the month.
5. They hired the car by the hour.
6. Temperature is measured by the degree Centigrade.
7. Freight is charged by weight(or volume).
8. I picked them up by twos and threes.

译文 15-3

1. 在美国鸡蛋是论打出售，在这里则论斤。
2. 我们按两购买黄金而买煤则按吨。
3. 这种管子是按米出售的。
4. 我们按月租赁那房子的。
5. 他们按小时雇用了车子。
6. 温度是以摄氏度计量的。

7. 货运是按重量（或体积）计算运费。
8. 我把它们两个三个地检了起来。
这里by用于计算方法，即加减乘除。

例组 15-4

1. He is her senior by seven years.
2. We missed the train by three minutes.
3. It needs to be longer by two centimeters.
4. The capital was increased by ¥ 10,000.
5. The profit was decreased by 20 percent.
6. It is a room five meters by four meters.
7. He is taller than I by a head.
8. His income was diminished by half.

译文 15-4

1. 他以七岁之差年长于她。
2. 我们以三分钟之差没有赶上那班火车。
3. 这需要加长两厘米。
4. 那资本增加了一万元。
5. 那利润下降了百分之二十。
6. 这是一间长为五米而宽为四米的房间。
7. 他高过我一个头。
8. 他的收入已减少了一半。

下面的by是人事物活动所遵照的方法或准则。

例组 15-5

1. He has lived all his life by rule.

2. Learn all these example by heart.
3. He could tell the points of the compass by the stars.
4. Do not judge a person by his looks.
5. Judging by the smell, the food must be good.
6. A man is known by the company he keeps.

译文 15-5

1. 他已经按照准则生活了整整的一生。
 2. 你要用心记住所有这些例子。
 3. 他能够按照星的方位判明罗盘的经点。
 4. 不要凭外貌来判断一个人（不要以貌取人）。
 5. 凭香味判断，那食物一定是好吃的。
 6. 一个人可以按照他所结交的伙伴而知其为人。
- 2) On的意义是依靠，依据，等等。

例组 15-6

1. The peasants live chiefly on rice.
2. The natives of these islands live mostly on fishing.
3. Children thrive on sunshine and good food.
4. Cows and sheeps feed on grass.
5. We live on our wages.
6. He was able to retire on his pension.
7. He depends upon his pen for living.
8. He is dependent on his father for maintenance.

译文 15-6

1. 农民主要依靠大米为食。
2. 这些岛上的土著大多依靠捕鱼为生。
3. 孩子们依靠阳光和良好食物而成长。
4. 牛羊依靠草料喂养。
5. 我们靠工资度日。
6. 他能够靠养老金退休。
7. 他靠他的笔头为生。
8. 他依靠他的父亲以维持生活。

上面例组15-6中on用于人物赖以生活的方法；下面例组15-7中on用于事物受到支持的方法；例组15-9中on用于事物行动的依据。

例组 15-7

1. Children walk on all fours.
2. My boy goes to school on foot.
3. At that time the mail was carried on the stage-coach.
4. A carriage goes on wheels, a sleigh on runners.
5. The roof rests on eight columns.
6. The theory doesn't have a leg to stand on.
7. It is better to fight on your feet than to live on your knees.
8. Our civilization is founded on our ability to make and use fire.

译文 15-7

1. 儿童靠双手两脚爬行。
2. 我的孩子是步行去上学的。
3. 那时代邮件是靠马车传递的。
4. 马车是靠轮子行驶，雪橇则靠滑板滑行。
5. 那屋顶是架在八根柱子上。
6. 那理论是站不住脚的。
7. 站起来斗争总比屈着膝忍辱过日子要好。
8. 我们的文明是有赖于我们会生火和利用火的能力而得以创立的。

例组 15-8

1. I came here on their invitation.
2. He read Lu xin's on her recommendation.
3. I was acting just on their advice.
4. He did it on the instructions of his superior.
5. I went to the party on the urging of my wife.
6. They were arrested on a charge of housebreaking.

译文 15-8

1. 我是根据他们的邀请而来到这里的。
2. 我是按照她的推荐而阅读了鲁迅的作品。
3. 我正是按照他们的意见而采取着行动的。
4. 他是按照他的上级的指示行事。
5. 我是根据我妻子的强烈要求而去参加了晚会。

6. 根据入侵住宅的指控他们受到了拘捕。

3) After主要用于模仿和效法,

例组 15-9

1. These ships were built after the same model.
2. The garden is built after Chinese old design.
3. The family upstairs live after foreign style.
4. The park is named after the great revolutionist Sun ZhongShan.
5. The boy was name after his grandfather.
6. He patterned himself after his father.

译文 15-9

1. 这些船只是按照同一模型建造的。
2. 那花园是按中国古色古香的安排而建筑的。
3. 楼上那户人家是按外国方式而生活。
4. 那公园是以伟大革命家孙中山的名字命名。
5. 那孩子是按他祖父的名字取名。
6. 他使自己摹仿他的父亲为人。

4) According to和in accordance with分别是专用于方法的复合和双重组合介词。

例组 15-10

1. Do this problem according to the way you have been showed.
2. The work has been carried out according to your instruction.

3. According to (=by) my watch it is half past one.
4. According to Newton's law gravitation has very little effect on light.
5. You must play the game in accordance with the rule.
6. Men who offended against the law must be punished in accordance with the law.

译文 15-10

1. 你要按照所示方法做这道题目。
2. 那工作已按照你的指示予以进行。
3. 照我的表现在是一点半。
4. 按照牛顿定律引力对光线没有作用。
5. 你必须按照规则进行球赛。
6. 犯法的人必须依法受到制裁。

15.3 手段和媒介

这是指事物的存在或发生是凭籍一定的手段或通过某种媒介予以实现。介词有：

- 1) By, etc, ZD → 凭籍或通过ZD (ZD26)

例组 15-11

1. You can send letters by mail or by hand.
2. I tried to get in touch with him by phone, but couldn't.
3. Do you like travel by train or by steamer?
4. The best way to learn sciences is by doing ex-

periment.

5. You can learn English pronunciation by listening to records.
6. We can make paste by mixing flour and water.
7. We can produce a flame by striking a match.
8. He escaped punishment by confessing everything.

译文 15-11

1. 你可以由邮寄或者派人投递信件。
2. 我试图通过电话同他联系，但没有做到。
3. 你喜欢搭火车还是趁轮船去旅游？
4. 学习科学的最好途径是通过做实验。
5. 你可以通过听录音学习英语的发音。
6. 我们可以籍混和面粉和水做成面糊。
7. 我们可以籍划根火柴产生火焰。
8. 他籍坦白了一切而避免了惩罚。

2) Through

例组 15-12

1. The mind knows the material world through the senses.
2. He obtained the place through the influence of his father.
3. He heard something of this through Ali, but he only smiled.
4. She spoke through an interpreter.
5. It was through him that I know her,

6. We learn to speak through speaking.
7. He obtained the work through his own efforts.
8. He became famed through hard work.
9. The colonial people can win liberation only through struggle.
10. Seed strains have also been improved through cross-breeding.

译文 15-12

1. 我们的头脑是通过感官而认识这物质世界的。
2. 他是通过他父亲的影响而获得了那位置。
3. 他通过阿丽听到了这事的一些情况，但他只一笑置之。
4. 她通过翻译人员讲了话。
5. 那是通过他我才认识她的。
6. 我们是通过说话学习讲话的。
7. 他通过自己的努力得到了那工作。
8. 他通过艰苦工作而成名。
9. 殖民地的人民只有通过斗争才能获得解放。
10. 种子的品系通过杂交也可以得到改进。

在例组15-12中例句1~5属于通过媒介，例句6~10则属于手段，这可以从例句2与例句7的比较可以看出。

3) On和over也常被认为是用于通过某种媒介，基本上都是通讯广播工具，如例组15-13所示。其中它们与用于空间的“在…上”和“在…上面”没有多大差别，特别是on，而over至少带有传递的意义。好在这种句子都比较简单，用处也有局限性。

例组 15-13

1. We heard the news over the broadcast.
2. It was broadcasted over the radio.
3. The matter was arranged over the telephone.
4. He is speaking on (over)the telephone.
5. I want to listen to the programme on the radio.
6. We saw the picture on the television last week.

译文 15-13

1. 我们是通过广播听到了那消息的。
2. 它是通过无线电予以广播的。
3. 那事情是通过电话得到安排的。
4. 他正通过（或在）电话（或电话上）在讲话。
5. 我想在收音机上听那节目。
6. 我们上星期在电视机上看了那影片。

4) Under

例组 15-14

1. Samuel Clemens wrote under the name of Mark Twain.
2. He absent from school under the pretence of illness.
3. He travelled under the disguise of a monk.
4. He cheated me under the mask of friendship.
5. The enemy approached under the cover of fog.

译文 15-14

1. 赛苗儿克里门新是以马克吐温的笔名写作的。
 2. 他以疾病的借口下没有上学。
 3. 他在乔装和尚下进行了旅行。
 4. 他以友谊的伪装下欺骗了我。
 5. 敌人在大雾的掩护下接近了我们。
- 5) 双重组合介词by dint of, by means of, by way of

例组 15-15

1. The boy got through college by dint of sheer determination.
2. The scientist succeeded by dint of his perseverance.
3. Perhaps the ants talk by means of their feelers.
4. He gained his supremacy by means of bribery.
5. By means of television we can see many exciting things going on in different parts of the world.
6. Children learn reading by way of picture.
7. I mentioned this point by way of cautioning you.
8. You must say something by way of introduction.

译文 15-15

1. 那孩子凭借彻底的决心读完了大学。
2. 那科学家凭借他的毅力而成功了。
3. 蚂蚁也许是通过它们的触须而交谈的。

4. 他是通过贿赂而窃取了权力。
5. 通过电视机我们可以看到许多正在世界各地进行的有趣事物。
6. 儿童们看图识字。
7. 我提出了这一点用以警告你。
8. 你一定要讲一些作为开场白。

练习 15-1

择优填入用于“主动因素, 方法, 手段和媒介等各介词并汉译下列各句:

1. The plan was approved...the congress.
2. ...a frank exchange of views, a new start has been made.
3. I was acting to some extent...their advice.
4. They were surrounded immediately ... small children.
5. He could tell the points of the compass...the stars.
6. The mayor is speaking...television tonight.
7. Can you make an airplane model...the prototype?
8. I came here...their invitation.
9. He was much impressed...what he saw here.
10. He was going to hear that symphony...Beethoven.
11. I object to the whole thing...principle.
12. They escaped...the cover of darkness.
13. He was depressed...what he had gone through.
14. Will you please make the box...this model.

15. ...the urgings of his friends, he penned a letter to the president.
16. She had already told me...the telephone about it.
17. Seed strains have also been improved...cross-breeding.
18. At night they were crossing the river ...the cover of heavy fire.
19. They rose in struggle to take back their land...force.
20. The Committee have decided...majority to ask you to remain.
21. I know...his appearance that he was not Chinese.
22. I went to Shanghai...non-stop express.
23. He is a surgeon...training.
24. I don't like to do things...halves.
25. Output of coal has increased...a wide margin.
26. Repeat the words...me.
27. Consumer goods production went up...6.6 per cent.
28. This room is five meters...four.
29. Flinging it with all his strength it missed...a meter.
30. He is older than his wife...seven years.

15.4 经历和接受

在这一项目中事物的存在或发生是经历和历尽了某种情况和对象, 以及接受了某种过程。

1) Through 在这里还是含有它用于空间时的两个意义

——通过和遍及，由此引伸为：

Through ZD→经历ZD (ZD12)

在译文中可以用不同的汉语词汇表达；至于“历尽”的汉语词汇更多，要从句中上下文来选用，但它的主要含意是“完毕”。

例组 15-16

1. Her courage carried her through the difficulties
2. He has passed through unutterable agonies.
3. That was a small matter after the hardships they had been through.
4. Very coolly she reviewed the scene she had been through.
5. What strange things they had been through!
6. You've no idea what we had to go through in those years.
7. She saw that Ali must have been through a great deal.
8. We could not go through that a second time.
9. He hoped that Ali might see him through the hardships.

译文 15-16

1. 她的勇气使她度过了各种困难。
2. 他已经历了有口难言的烦恼。
3. 在他们所经受过的艰难困苦后那算是小事情了。
4. 她极其冷静地回顾了其所经历的那场争吵。

5. 他们经历了多么离奇古怪的事!
6. 你们无法设想在那年代里我们经历了什么。
7. 她知道阿里一定经受了痛苦。
8. 我们不能再一次经历那种事。
9. 他希望阿丽可以帮助他度过艰难困苦。

例组 15-17

1. The book went through ten editions.
2. We are through school at five o'clock.
3. He plans to work his way through college.
4. He soon got through all his fortune.
5. Could you get through all the work yourself?
6. I saw through his little tricks.
7. I'd like to have you go through my book.
8. She soon read through the preface and the introduction.

译文 15-17

1. 那本书已销售完十个版本。
 2. 我们五点钟上完课。
 3. 他计划靠自己工作读完大学。
 4. 他很快花完了他的财产。
 5. 你能自己完成所有的工作吗?
 6. 我已看穿了他的小花招。
 7. 我希望你把我的书看一遍。
 8. 她很快读完了序言和导论。
- 2) Under是指事物在经历一个过程中, 它一般是被动

的，所以它既经历而又接受了这一过程。

under ZD → 接受 ZD (ZD5)

要是把这里的“under ZD”译为“在ZD中”，它的意义基本上也是对的，就是under的含意冲淡了而接近于in。

例组 15-18

1. The road is under repair.
2. The case is under trial.
3. The subject is under discussion.
4. The whole matter is under review.
5. He is under the sentence of death.
6. A new school-house is under construction.
7. The new machine-parts are under examination.
8. For several weeks he has been under treatment for a flu.

译文 15-18

1. 那条路还在经受修理。
2. 那案件正在经受审理。
3. 那问题正在受到讨论。
4. 整个事情正在经受检讨。
5. 他受到死刑的判决。
6. 新的校舍正在承受建造。
7. 那些新的机器部件正在接受检验。
8. 他接受流感的治疗已经有几个星期了。

15.5 控制和被控制

介词over和under在用于空间时,分别有覆盖和被覆盖的含意,可以把它们引用到这里,‘控制’只不过是一个代表性意义。

1) Over在这里是指‘有权力’等在 ZD 之上,亦即统治,战胜,克服等。

over ZD → $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{临ZD之上} \\ \text{统治, 克服ZD} \end{array} \right.$ (ZD4)

例组 15-19

1. The Chinese father has great authority over his family.
2. He has great power over the people.
3. The Queen reigns over a great empire.
4. The mayor presides over the city council.
5. I can not get over my timidity.
6. We have prevailed over(against) our enemy.
7. Virtue triumph over vice in the end.
8. He helped them over the difficulties in their studies.
9. This money would tide them over their worst hardships.

译文 15-19

1. 中国人的父亲具有总管他全家的较大权力。

2. 他具有驾驭人民之上的大权。
3. 那王后统治着一个大帝国。
4. 那市长主持了市政会议。
5. 我无法克服我的胆怯。
6. 我们已战胜了我们的敌人。
7. 善终于战胜了恶。
8. 他帮助他们克服他们学习中的困难。
9. 这笔钱将使他们度过他们最大的苦难。

2) Under是over的逆义词, 即

under ZD→在ZD之下受统治, ... (ZD5a)

例组 15-20

1. The army is under his direct command.
2. The children are under my charge.
3. We will be very happy to work under his leadership.
4. The soldiers were searching under order.
5. He was disqualified under the rules of the game.
6. Many people are groaning under the pressure for money.
7. I could not walk a step under such heavy a load.
8. She sank under a load of grief.

译文 15-20

1. 陆军是在他的直接指挥之下。
2. 孩子们都是在我的照管之下。
3. 在他的领导下工作我们会非常愉快。

4. 士兵们正在奉命搜查。
5. 在比赛规则的条件下他被取消了资格。
6. 许多人正在金钱压力下呻吟。
7. 我在这样重的负担下已无法移动一步。
8. 她在沉重的悲痛下身心垮了。

练习 15-2

择优填入介词: over, under, through 和复合介词 according to 以及双重组合介词 by means of, by dint of, by way of 和 in accordance with, 并汉译下列各句:

1. This quarrel cast a dark shadow...their relations.
2. He said the note has already been...study.
3. She is nearly forty, and has been...dreadful times.
4. This area has always been...Chinese jurisdiction.
5. This money would tide them...the worst difficulties.
6. That has no relation to the matter...discussion.
7. I am...instructions not to say anything.
8. That was nothing after the hardships they had been....
9. All places of strategic importance came...their occupation.
10. The whole problem will also come...review.
11. It rapidly extended its influence...all people.
12. You need a rest after all you have gone....

13. Do you keep him...observation?
14. ...Newton's law of gravitation, everything in the universe attracts everything else...itself.
15. ...straining and twisting, he felt his binds were loosened. .
16. His second statement was not...the first.
17. We will go...the new non-stop express railway.
18. ...telephone you can talk to your friends anywhere in the world.
19. I mentioned them...illustration.
20. They completed their task...hard work.

第十六章 途径(下)

这一章是途径的继续，但除伴随外，其余都属于特殊途径，如：否定，此外，除去，尽管，以及要是。

16.1 伴随

这是指人事物的存在或发生是伴随着另一方的人事物相辅相成。具体地说，我们将讨论重要介词with。它用于空间和时间时，它的意义也是伴随。用于人世间时，它的用处很广，用法可以概括为三类：(1)同；(2)用或以；(3)具有或充填；分述于16.1~16.3三节。

在这一节中去讨论“同”：

withZD——→同ZD在一起 (ZD20)

并把它分成下面五个例组说明：例组16-1中人同人事物的相识；例组16-2中人同人的相商；例组16-3中人事物间的相符，例组16-4中人同人的相伴；例组16-5中人事物间的相随活动。

例组 16-1

1. I got acquainted with her in Japan.
2. I am very intimate with her.
3. She associates with every kind of men.
4. He was assimilated with the natives.

5. I refuse to deal with that firm any longer.
6. He made me acquainted with the matter.
7. You are certainly familiar with all the procedure.
8. Are you familiar with English sounds yet?
9. The judge was not acquainted with all the facts.
10. I am not familiar with his name, but his face seems familiar to me.

译文 16-1

1. 我是在日本同她相识的。
2. 我是同她非常亲密的。
3. 她同各式各样的人交往。
4. 他已与那些本地人同化。
5. 我拒绝不再同那家公司交易。
6. 他使我了解那件事情。
7. 你肯定熟悉所有的程序。
8. 你已经熟悉英语的音调了吗?
9. 那审判员不了解所有的事实。
10. 我不熟悉他的姓名, 但他的面貌对我似乎是熟悉的。

上面例句 6 ~ 10 中 familiar with 和 acquainted with 均按习惯词组汉译。

例组 16-2

1. I wish to talk with you in private.
2. The students have an argument with the teacher.
3. I am going to discuss some matter with friends

tonight.

4. We shall advise with him on the question.
5. It is useless to reason with that stubborn old woman.
6. The woman bargained with the shopkeeper for the table.
7. I had a quarrel with him this morning.
8. The boys compete with each other.
9. The policemen struggled with the thieves.
10. We cannot compromise with those whose principles are opposite to ours.

译文 16-2

1. 我希望同你私下谈谈。
2. 那些学生同老师有点争论。
3. 我今晚将同一些朋友讨论些问题。
4. 我们将在那个问题上同他相商。
5. 同那个老顽固女人说理是没有用的。
6. 那女人为了买这桌子同店员讨价还价。
7. 今天早晨我同他争吵了。
8. 那些男孩子互相竞争。
9. 公安人员同小偷们进行了搏斗。
10. 我们无法同那些在原则与我们相反的人妥协。

例组 16-3

1. Your views exactly coincide with mine.
2. His actions do not consist with his words.

3. This book exactly corresponds with my needs.
4. Personal interest is not always compatible with public interest.
5. Does this red go well with this yellow?
6. The music is not in harmony with his taste.
7. He joined with us in the project.
8. I parted with my friend yesterday.
9. He has broken with his best friend.
10. Let us dispense with ceremony.

译文 16-3

1. 你的观点同我的完全一致。
2. 他的行动同他的说话不一致。
3. 这本书同我的需要完全相合。
4. 个人利益并不总是同公众利益相一致。
5. 这一红色是不是同那一黄色相配?
6. 那音乐同他的口味不相合,
7. 他已在那个计划方面同我们联合。
8. 我已于昨天同我的朋友分手。
9. 他已经同他最好的朋友绝交。
10. 让我们免除礼节。

例组 16-4

1. Is there anyone with you or you are alone?
2. You are the only doctor with us.
3. He works with some fine people.
4. I side with him on this question.

5. They stood with us in the debate.
6. She soon fell into conversation with him.
7. I went there with my mother.
8. He shared a room with his brother.
9. I traveled in China in company with my uncle.
10. Will you come and have dinner with us this evening.

译文 16-4

1. 有没有什么人同你在一起还是你独自一个?
2. 你是同我们在一起的唯一医生。
3. 他同一些优秀的人在一起工作。
4. 在这一问题上我同他站在一边。
5. 在那辩论中他们同我们站在一起。
6. 她很快同他进行交谈。
7. 我是同我的母亲一起去那里的。
8. 他同他的兄弟合住了一个房间。
9. 我是同我的叔叔结伴在中国旅行的。
10. 你今晚来同我们一起吃饭, 好吗?

例组 16-5

1. A tree's shadow moves with the sun.
2. The boat floated along with the current.
3. The price increases with quantity.
4. The size varies with the temperature.
5. we start to work every morning with the rise of the sun, and get rest with the set of the sun.

6. You had to run fast to catch with him.

译文 16-5

1. 树的影子随着阳光移动而移动。
2. 那船随水流飘浮着。
3. 那价值随数量而增加。
4. 大小随温度而改变。
5. 我们日出而作，日入而息。
6. 你必须跑得快以便赶上他。

16.2 工具和方式

伴随的一方也可以是事物所用的工具和所采取的方式，
即

with ZD—→用或以ZD (ZD20a)

其中：工具总是具体的，参看例组16-6；方式可以是具体的或者抽象的，参看例组16-7和16-8。

例组 16-6

1. We hear with our ears and see with our eyes.
2. The teacher rubs off words with an eraser.
3. I dry my hands and face with towel.
4. The tree was cut down with an axe.
5. The garden is surrounded with walls.
6. The streets are lighted with electric lights.
7. The teacher tested the students with many questions.

8. She studied me with her sharp bright eyes.

译文 16-6

1. 我们用我们的耳朵听并用眼睛看。
2. 那老师用黑板擦把字擦去。
3. 我用毛巾擦干了双手和面部。
4. 那树是用斧子把它砍倒的。
5. 那花园是用墙把它围起来的。
6. 街道是用电灯照明的。
7. 那老师用许多问题测试了学生。
8. 她用她敏锐鲜明的目光打量着我。

例组 16-7

1. I'm reading the book with the aid of a dictionary.
2. All the morning he worked with the door locked.
3. we designed a new pump with a detachable motor.
4. Don't sleep with the light on.
5. Houses are regularly sprayed with DDT.
6. This is stewed pork with bamboo shoots.
7. He hesitated and advanced with outstretched hands.
8. Ali was lying on the bed with all his clothes on.

译文 16-7

1. 我正在借助一本词典读着那本书。

2. 整整一个上午他锁上了门在里面工作。
3. 我们设计了一个带有随装随卸的电动机的新水泵。
4. 不要开着灯睡觉。
5. 房屋是按时以DDT喷洒。
6. 这是（用）毛笋炖肉。
7. 他迟疑了一下就张开了手向前走。
8. 阿里衣服穿得整整齐齐在床上躺着。

例组 16-8

1. I accept your kind invitation with pleasure.
2. I love my country with my whole heart.
3. She working with extraordinary energy.
4. we must handle the machine with great care.
5. Our team won the match with ease.
6. They left with a heavy heart.
7. He spoke to me with a haughty air.
8. She nodded with a smile.
9. He stood quite still, listening with concentration.

译文 16-8

1. 我以愉快的心情接受你的盛情邀请。
2. 我全心全意热爱我的祖国。
3. 她正以非凡的精力工作着。
4. 我们必须以十分的注意管理那台机器。
5. 我们球队十分轻松地胜了那场比赛，
6. 他们以沉重的心情离开了。

7. 他以傲慢的神气对我讲了话。
8. 他带着微笑点了一下头。
9. 他站着一动也不动，聚精会神听着。

16.3 带有和充填

伴随的一方也可以是事物所带有或加有的，见例组16-9；也可以是所充填着的，包括填充物和复盖物，例组16-10。

with ZD → 带有或充填为ZD (ZD20b)

例组 16-9

1. China is a very large country with a long history.
2. She is an oculist with a good practice.
3. That house with the green roof is mine.
4. Who is that man with white hair and dark eyes.
5. The lamp with the red shade is alight.
6. He went with a letter to see the manager.
7. She is a lady with a kind heart.
8. Have you any money with you?

译文 16-9

1. 中国是个具有悠久历史的幅员十分辽阔的国家。
2. 她是个具有良好临床经验的眼科医生。
3. 那所带有绿色屋顶的房子是我的。
4. 那个有白头发和深色眼睛的人是谁？

5. 那盏有红灯罩的灯还亮着。
6. 他带着一封信去见了那经理。
7. 她是个具有慈善心肠的妇人。
8. 你有钱带在身边吗？

例组 16-10

1. The gymnasium was soon filled with people.
2. The city was all decorated with flags.
3. Her eyes were dimmed with tears.
4. The boat has gone rapidly with sails filled with the wind.
5. Thousands of blossoms drenched the air with fragrance.
6. He went home loaded with honour.
7. He was filled with boiling anger.
8. The tops of the mountains are covered with snow.
9. Many hills have been densely planted with trees.
10. His hands were stained with dye.
11. The room is painted with moonlight.
12. His mind was occupied with the future.

译文 16-10

1. 那体育馆很快就挤满了人。
2. 整个城市悬旗结彩。
3. 她的眼睛充满了泪水而模糊了。
4. 那船已经顺风满帆疾驶而去。
5. 成千上万朵鲜花使空气中充满了香味。

6. 他已满载荣誉回到家乡。
7. 他已满腔怒火。
8. 那几座山顶上都覆盖着雪。
9. 许多山丘上已密密麻麻地种上了树。
10. 他的双手沾满了染料。
11. 那房间复盖着一片月光。
12. 他的脑子里充满了未来的想望。

16.4 否定

Without是介词中的唯一否定词，为with的负意词。一般说来：

without ZD → 没有ZD (ZD24)

这一译意见例组16-11。我们还可以有否定之否定 be not without, not修饰动词be, 所以without还是‘没有’，参看例组16-12；without也可以用来作条件的“要是没有，列入例组16-12；without后紧接分词时，常以“不”代替“没有”，视情况而定，例组16-13。

例组 16-11

1. For several days they were without food.
2. Most people have been without coal for about a week.
3. They exported commodities there without restriction.
4. It was almost without precedent in local history.
5. I have told you times without number and you

still forget.

6. We accomplished the task without difficulty.
7. He opened the letter without much interest.
8. We are still without news of the missing vessel.
9. She looked at me without expression.
10. I can do it without your help.
11. The rumour was without foundation.
12. Without a moment's hesitation, he pushed open the door.

译文 16-11

1. 有好几天他们没有吃的东西。
2. 大多数人已经有一个星期左右没有煤了。
3. 他们出口商品到那里没有限制。
4. 这在当地历史上几乎没有先例。
5. 我已经告诉你无数次而你还是忘记。
6. 我们毫无困难地完成了那任务。
7. 他没精打采地拆开了那封信。
8. 我们还没有那条失踪船只的消息。
9. 她毫无表情地朝我看着。
10. 我可以没有你的帮助而做到它。
11. 那谣言是毫无根据的。
12. 毫无片刻迟疑, 他推开了那扇门。

例组 16-12

1. He is not without money.
2. For this he was not without some preparation.

3. This shows that he is not without a sense of humour.
4. I rejected his proposal , and not without reason.
5. Without water, nothing could live.
6. No sound can exist without movement.
7. I can't do it without your help.
8. Without intellectuals our work cannot be done well.
9. He is very short-sighted, almost helpless without his glasses.

译文 16-12

1. 他不是没有钱。
2. 为此他并不是没有些准备。
3. 这说明他并不是没有幽默感。
4. 我拒绝了他的建议, 而且不是没有理由的。
5. 要是没有水, 就没有什么能够生存。
6. (要是) 没有运动就没有声音可以存在。
7. 要是没有你的帮助, 我就无法做到它。
8. 要是没有知识分子。我们的工作就无法做得好。
9. 他十分近视, 没有眼镜几乎束手无策。

例组 16-13

1. He said it seriously without smiling.
2. He passed without seeing me.
3. He went away without taking leave.

4. He worked the whole day without taking any rest.
5. We searched the place without finding what we were after.
6. Can you cut that tree down without damaging the greenhouse?
7. They discussed it back and forth without getting very far.
8. Without knowing anything about the stranger, I refused to tell him anything.
9. He was gone without umbrella.
10. Do you ever travel without a ticket?

译文 16-13

1. 他说得很严肃，连笑也不笑一下。
2. 他走过而不看我一眼。
3. 他离开了也不打个招呼。
4. 他工作了一整天而从不休息一下。
5. 我们搜查了那地方而找不到我们要找的东西。
6. 你能否把那棵树砍倒而不损坏那温室？
7. 他们把它反复讨论而达不到很深入。
8. 不知道关于那陌生人的一些来历，我已拒绝告诉他任何事情。
9. 他已经去了而不带把伞。
10. 你曾否不买票而旅行过吗？

例组 16-14

1. You cannot do anything without energy.

2. I don't like a house without a bathroom.
3. No one may enter or leave without permission.
4. They never meet without quarrelling.
5. Nobody could do that without our seeing.
6. I never see you without thinking of money.
7. He can't speak English without making mistakes.
8. You cannot get the book back without paying some rewards.

译文 16-14

1. 你不花力气就无法做成任何事情。
2. 我不喜欢没有浴室的房屋。
3. 未经许可没有什么人可以进去或出来。
4. 他们从来没有见面而不争吵的。
5. 没有人能够做了那事而不让我们看到。
6. 我从没有看到你不在考虑金钱。
7. 他不会讲英语而不出点错误。
8. 你不给点报酬就无法把那本书拿回来。

练习 16-1

填入with和without; 并指出在那几句中它们 都可用, 那几句则不能, 为什么: 最后汉译。

1. I felt at ease...her.
2. They discussed...me for about an hour.
3. I'm sure he will want to go into it further...you.
4. I have been trying to make contact...him all this week.

5. My own ideas in the matter are practically identical...yours.
6. He was a careful man...his words.
7. The Indians fought mostly...bows and arrows.
8. I'm reading the book...the aid of a dictionary.
9. I found the place...difficulty.
10. Ali listened...concentration.
11. It is a ballet...a modern revolutionary theme.
12. That was a big wardrobe...a mirror.
13. Work continued until midnight...short rest periods
14. The feeling had deepened ... the passing of the years.
15. We were...him in the debate.
16. ...a second thought, he joined in the work.
17. They all spoke out on what was known and ... reserve.
18. It was all done...necessary permit.
19. We must carry out the the instruction...delay.
20. They reached their destination...trouble.
21. You shouldn't get out...a coat in this weather.
22. You could get in...a pass.
23. He agreed...comment.
24. I was left...a ray of hope.
25. A study of their experience will not be...benefit.
26. Marriage...registration is illegal.
27. He is reading the letter...much interest.
28. How are you getting on...him?

29. She is working...energy.
30. ...much exaggeration he said that he hardly slept a wink.

16.5 此外

这是指事物的存在或发生以除此外为前提，我们有下面两个介词 *besides* 和 *in addition to*;

besides, etc. ZD → 除ZD外 (ZD27)

例组 16-15

1. There were two or three others besides myself.
2. The helium nucleus contains two other particles besides the two protons.
3. This design has many other advantages besides lower cost.
4. Some roots do another job besides feeding their plants.
5. What do you know of people besides their appearances?
6. Have you nothing to tell besides what I have already heard?
7. We spoke of no one besides you.
8. We have no other tools besides these.
9. We are studying German in addition to English.
10. In addition to swimming, he likes tennis.
11. They stole those valuable paintings in addition to the money.

12. Saturn has ten moons in addition to its amazing rings.

译文 16-15

1. 除我自己外还有两三个别的人。
2. 氦核子中除了两个质子外还有别的两个粒子。
3. 除了成本较低外这一设计还有许多别的优点。
4. 有些根茎除了供养它们的躯干外还担负着别的任务。
5. 除了他们的外表外，你还了解人的什么？
6. 除了我已经听到的外，你已没有别的什么可说吗？
7. 除了你外我们再没有提到别人。
8. 除了这些外我们再没有其它工具，
9. 除了英语外我们还学习德语。
10. 除了游泳外，他还喜欢打网球。
11. 除了金钱外，他们还偷走几张珍贵的油画。
12. 除了它那使人惊奇的光环外，土星还有十个卫星。

从例组16-15中可以看出：（1）句中如没有besides ZD则意思比较含糊；（2）事物的数量是在ZD的基础上递增。如例句，要是单说There are Two or three others，就很难说明other指的是什么，即便知道是什么也不清楚说的用意；有了besides myself则知道指的人并且说明一共有三、四个。这些对于疑问句如例句5和6以及否定句如例句7和8也都如此。这在译文中以除ZD外还…来表达。

16.6 除去

这是指事物的存在或发生以除去此或不算此为特定条

件，亦即这里的‘此’并不包含在事物之中这是与上节中事物要在ZD的基础上增加的不同之处。这用法的介词有 but 和 except 以及 except 的几个变化形式。总起来说，

but, etc. ZD → 除去 ZD (ZD28)

其中：but 前面只紧接 all, everybody, anything, nothing, no one, next, last, who, what, 等词，而句子常带有否定意；except 则无此限制；excepting 经常用于句首，或与 not, without 等词连用。

例组 16-16

1) But

1. They are all wrong but me.
2. He seldom talked of anything but politics.
3. They looked in every place but the right place.
4. She eats nothing but fruits.
5. He listens to no one but you.
6. He owned nothing but the clothes on his back.
7. What is he but a fool?
8. Who but a fool would do such a thing?
9. He was the last but two to arrive.
10. Take the next turning but one on your right.

译文 16-16

1. 除了我他们全是错的。
2. 除了政治他基本上什么都不谈。
3. 他们到处找就是漏去了该找的地方。
4. 除了水果她什么都不吃。
5. 除了你他听不进任何别人的话。

6. 除了他身上的衣服他一无所有、
 7. 除了傻瓜他能是什么呢?
 8. 除了笨蛋有谁会做出这样的事呢?
 9. 除了两个不算, 他是最后一个到达的。(即倒数第三个)
 10. 除了这一个, 你要在再下一个拐角处向左拐。
- 2) Except, excepting, except for

例组 16-17

1. I have finished all the letters except one.
2. We go to school every day except Sunday.
3. Every person present except ourselves would protest.
4. I received nothing except what was due to me.
5. This essay is good except for the careless mistakes.
6. Except for Ali, you can all go.
7. He answered all the questions except for the last one.
8. We had no trouble on the journey except for a flat tire.
9. Excepting this one, they are all right.
10. Everyone, not excepting the pilot, survived the crash.
11. We are all fallible, without excepting the saint.
12. Excepting a single case, nothing more remains to be attended to.

译文 16-17

1. 不算这一封我已经写完了所有的信。
2. 除了星期日我们每天都去上学。
3. 除了我们自己每个到会的人都会抗议。
4. 除了该给我的什么我没有接受任何东西。
5. 除了几处疏忽的错误这篇文章可说是完好的。
6. 除了阿里，你们都可以去了。
7. 除了最后一个他回答了全部问题。
8. 除了一次轮胎漏气我们旅途上没有一点麻烦。
9. 除了这一个，他们全是对的。
10. 每一个人都在飞机撞毁中幸存下来，驾驶员也不除外。
11. 我们都是会犯错误的，圣贤也不除外。
12. 除了个别情况，再没有什么还须予以注意。

16.7 尽管如此

这一用法即通常所谓“让步(concession)”，汉译可以是“虽然，即使，等”。事实上，这也可以看作是一种因果，不过结果适得其反；因而就不成其为原因，而成为事物出乎意料的存在或发生的前提。用在这里的介词有despite, notwithstanding, 复合介词after all, for all, with all, 以及双重组合介词in spite of。

despite, etc. ZD → 尽管 ZD (ZD29)

当然，汉译中还可以有类似而不同的词汇。

1) 简单介词：

例组 16-18

1. Despite his great skill, he has accomplished very little.
2. He remains modest despite his achievements.
3. Despite a shortage of steel, our output has increased.
4. Despite his objection, he came with us.
5. They travelled on notwithstanding the storm.
6. Notwithstanding the long delay, I'll still go.

译文 16-18

1. 尽管他的非凡技能，他几乎还无所成就。
2. 尽管他的各种成就，他还是照常谦虚的。
3. 尽管钢材短缺，我们的产量还是增加了。
4. 虽然他反对，他还是跟我们一起来了。
5. 他们不顾风暴继续旅行。
6. 尽管久久延迟，我还是要去。

2) 复合介词after all, for all, with all, 以及组合介词in spite of

例组 16-19

1. After all my advice, he still went his own way.
2. After all my care in packing it, the clock arrived broken.
3. For all his wealth, he is not happy.
4. For all your explanations, I understand no bet-

ter than before.

5. For all his boasting, he has achieved very little.
6. With all his faults, he was a kind-hearted fellow.
7. With all his ability, he failed completely.
8. With all his knowledge, he is not apedent.
9. We had quite an enjoyable holiday, in spite of the weather.
10. In spite of the rain I am going out for a walk.
11. The soldiers kept on fighting in spite of all setbacks.
12. In spite of being sober he is really a most attractive person.
13. Ali went to school in spite of her illness.
14. They persisted in doing it, in spite of my warning.

译文 16-19

1. 不顾我的劝告，他还是自行其事。
2. 尽管我在包装时的细心，那钟到达时已破损。
3. 尽管他富有，他并不是幸福的。
4. 尽管你的种种解释，我不比以前了解得更好。
5. 尽管他自吹自擂，他几乎一无所成。
6. 尽管他的种种错误，他还是个心地善良的人。
7. 尽管他的才能，他还是全部失败了。
8. 尽管他的知识，他却不是个卖弄学问的人。
9. 尽管气候如此，我们还是度过了一个相当愉快的假日。
10. 不顾有雨，我还是要出去散一下步。
11. 士兵们不顾一切挫折而继续战斗下去。

12. 尽管严肃朴实, 他其实是个最有吸引力的人。
13. 尽管她有病, 阿丽还是去上学。
14. 不顾我的警告, 他们坚持去做。

16.8 要(不)是如此

这里的介词词组表达事物存在或发生的条件, 所用介词有but for和in case of,

but for, etc. ZD → 要不是或万一 ZD (ZD30)

例组 16-20

1. But for this defect he was quite a good teacher.
2. But for the rain we should had a pleasant journey.
3. I could not have done it, but for your help.
4. But for his arms I would have collapsed.
5. They will carry the children off in case of danger.
6. He armed himself with an axe in case of emergencies.
7. In case of need I can make a trip there.
8. In case of difficulty call the operators.

译文 16-20

1. 要不是有这一缺点, 他本是一个相当好的教师。
2. 要不是下雨我们本该有一次愉快的旅行。
3. 要不是你帮助, 我本来无法完成它。

4. 要不是有他的手臂我本会摔倒的。
5. 万一有危险他们会把儿童带走。
6. 他把自己用斧子武装起来以防万一。
7. 要是需要我可以到那里走一趟。
8. 要是有困难请呼叫接线员。

16.9 介词用于人世间的小结

按照介词的用法和它们的译意，我们可以把它们用于人世间的情况小结如下：

表达处境ZA的有：at, on (upon), 和in三个，与用于XA和YA一样，同属于静态；所不同的是在这里upon用得较多；它们的译意也较复杂，总的来说为“处在ZA”。

表达优选对比ZB的有：above, below, over, under, before, behind, between, among, within, outside, beyond, past, beside, about；它们的译意比较灵活，无从概括，我们一方面要参考XB和YB，另一方面要选择恰当的汉译。

表达来龙去脉ZC的有：at, on (upon), toward(s), for, against, after, as, from, off, out of, of, through, over, by, to, into, up to, about, 以及若干专用于ZC的介词；它们各自所表达的ZC和译意都可从各节标题看出。

表达途径ZD的有：by, on, after, through, over, under, with, without, 以及 besides, but, despite, 等等专用介词；它们的译意均须从各自用法的各种情况决定。

总的说来，各介词三类用途X、Y、Z在四种用法A、

B、C、D中是统一的，译意也相通的。实际上，用于空间的介词基本上都可用于人世间，由于比较少用，没有全部列入。

练习 16-2

择优填入用于“此外，除去，尽管，和要（不）是”各介词，并汉译下列各句：

1. There are in China over fifty minorities...Hans.
2. She went on with the work...the difficulties.
3. None of them spoke English...Ali.
4. ...his arms I would have collapsed.
5. Nobody else...Ali could ever say such a thing.
6. He did the wrong thing, ...my advice.
7. ...the rise in price, luxury goods are still much in demand.
8. We bought some baking-powder...the flour.
9. They harvested very little...their effort.
10. I looked everywhere...there.
11. ...his faults he is frank and honest.
12. He armed himself with a gun...emergencies.
13. They went on with the work...the rain.
14. ...these subjects, they taught physics.
15. Did he give you anything...the letter.
16. He persisted in going his own way ... our warning.
17. ...your interference, things should have looked very black indeed.

18. ...his boasting, he has achieved very little.
19. You will have nobody...yourself to blame.
20. ... fire, ring the bell.
21. ...the best of intentions, he failed completely.
22. ... its drawbacks, it was a place of quiet peace.
23. ...his illness, he might have succeeded.
24. ...his learning he was a very stupid man.
25. ...being wrong, your proposed action is also unwise.

部分四 介词词组的特殊功能

英语介词词组在句子中的各种功能我们已在前面各章节中或多或少见到过，这本是语法问题，似乎无须专门讨论。这部分的意图是通过几个特殊功能进一步了解：（1）有关介词用途和用法上的分类；（2）介词与别的词类的搭配以及搭配与用法的联系；和（3）介词成语或习惯用语与用法的联系以及与汉语习惯用法的对比。

第十七章 of-词组作为名词修饰词

17.1 概论

介词of的一种用法相当于介词from并有时可以通用，详见第四，第八和第十三各章，它的词组都不是名词修饰语。由于of本身就是最常见的介词，而of词组又最多用作名词修饰语，这在以前各章节中讨论其它介词举例时常不易避免of词组的同时存在而可以看出。作为名词修饰语，of词组相当于各种形容词，它与人事物之间是修饰与被修饰的关系；of本身相当于汉语中的“的”，它的含意可以概括为“具有”，“属于”等。所以，除了在用于空间，时间以及连同

人世间这三类用途上还是可以区别外，在用法上很难并且也没有必要按以前的四种予以划分。在这方面有些词典和书籍是按照of词组的局部语法作用分为主表，动宾，等等，这样也未免分得过细；对于熟悉语法的人来说大可不必，而对于初学者则徒增复杂性。个人认为可以按照修饰与被修饰概括为以下各节中的关系。另一方面，我们可以按照汉语“的”字的习惯用法概括为下列两种汉译：

1) n of POB → POB的n (ZC15a)

2) n of POB → n的POB (ZC15b)

其中：POB是指介词宾语 (preposition object)；

n指另一方面的人事物。

在第二种汉译中修饰关系已倒过来了，of词组成为被修饰语。在原文中这一问题可以看作是of与它宾语的结合在减弱而与另一方面人事物的结合在加强，因而of词组已逐渐失去它的存在和修饰作用。（关于这一点还要在下面两章中提到）

17.2 特征的描写

人事物都各有特征让我们来描写。描写的方法可以用形容词，也可以用介词词组。例如，an able man(能干的人)和a man of ability (具有才干的人)，这里单从一个人的描写来说它们是一样的，即介词词组of ability相当于形容词able，但在应用上要看语气而定。此外，用来描写的形容词过于冗长或者根本没有相当的形容词时，那末我们就得用介词词组(这一点对于介词词组作为名词修饰语时都适用)。

例组 17-1

1. To accomplish this task we need a man of courage.
2. Here you will often meet men of foreign appearances.
3. He is a man of decent origin.
4. She is only a child of five years.
5. They are living in a house of stone.
6. It is a building of more than one hundred stories.
7. The wind of great force destroyed everything on its way.
8. It is a story of great interest.
9. That was a matter of no importance to us.
10. There are seven things of necessity in house keeping.

译文 17-1

1. 要完成这一任务我们需要一个有勇气的人。
2. 在这里你经常会遇到外国人模样的人。
3. 他是个出身良好的人。
4. 她只是个五岁的孩子。
5. 他们住在一所石头的房子。
6. 这是个百层以上的大楼。
7. 强大力量的风破坏了它沿途的一切东西。
8. 这是个极有意义的故事。
9. 那是件对我们无关重要的事情。

10. 在家务中有七项必需的东西。(开门七件事)。

从例组17-1中可以看出,人事物是各以不同的特征来描写,各介词词组基本上有相当的形容词来代替,其中最简单的如例句1中的a man of courage就是courageous man,依此类推,人事物的描写是属于式(ZC15a)的类型。

17.3 所属的主体

人事物也可以由他们所属的主体来修饰,亦即给予人事物一定的限止。

例组 17-2

1. The courage of the girls made them winning the game.
2. The love of a mother is common to all animals.
3. She is a perfect complement of her husband.
4. He was familiar with the works of Shakespeare.
5. The first of June is the universal children's day.
6. We live in the suburb of Beijing.
7. They used to be the legs of an old table.
8. The surface of the lake was smooth like a mirror.
9. It is not easy to judge of the qualities of foods.
10. I do not like the taste of garlic in food.
11. These are fruits of our own growing.
12. Compass was an invention of Chinese origin.

译文 17-2

1. 姑娘们的勇气使她们胜了那场球赛。
2. 母（亲的）爱是所有动物的共性。
3. 她是她丈夫的贤内助。
4. 他熟悉莎士比亚的著作。
5. 六月一日是国际儿童节。
6. 我们住在北京的郊区。
7. 它们原是一张旧桌子的腿。
8. 那湖的表面平静得象面镜子。
9. 判断食物的质量是不容易的。
10. 我不欢喜食物中有大蒜的味道。
11. 这些是我们自己培养的水果。
12. 指南针是源出于中国的发明。

从例组17-2中可以看出，人事物之所属亦即主体之所有，这里of-词组相当于所有格（用那一种形式的所有格按一般语法规定），例如：

the courage of the girls=the girls' courage,
the works of Shakespeare=Shakespeare's works,
the Surface of the lake=the lake surface,
the qualities of the food=the food qualities,
fruits of our own growing=our own growing
fruits.

为了突出主体，或者由于缺少适当的所有格，我们就得要用of-词组来表达。在汉译中各句都采用了式（ZC15a）

17.4 人事物的说明

人事物有时需要通过介词词组作些补充说明，亦即人事物所指是什么。

例组 17-3

- The tourists went as far as the city of Xian.
2. Who was the driver of the car when the accident happened?
 3. She came here as a teacher of English.
 4. His love of his mother gave me a deep impression.
 5. He was given an opportunity of explaining himself.
 6. The discovery of America usually attributes to Columbus.
 7. He made a habit of coming late.
 8. The cause of the accident is still unknown.
 9. Let's change the topic of our discussion right now.
 10. Many crimes link with the vice of drunkenness.
 11. The three of them were all qualified for the job.
 12. All (both, none) of us agreed his plan.

译文 17-3

1. 旅游的人最远一直到达西安市。
2. 车祸发生时那车子的司机是哪一个？

3. 她是作为一个英语的教师来到了这里。
4. 他对他的母亲的敬爱给了我深刻的印象。
5. 他被给予了一个自行解释的机会。
6. 美洲的发现通常归之于哥伦布。
7. 他养成了迟到的习惯。
8. 那事故的原因还属未知。
9. 让我们现在就改变一下讨论的题目。
10. 许多罪行都同酗酒之害联系在一起。
11. 他们三个对那工作都是合格的。
12. 我们全体（两个，没有一个）同意了他的计划。

在例组17-3的各句中人事物所指的什么都是清楚的。其中要说明的是例句1的City of Xian, 它整个是一地名“西安市”，这里“市”指的是“西安”而不是别的；它不同于“the city or suburb of Xian, 是所属问题（见例组17-2中例句6）。此外，例句11和12中的“三个”和“全体”是分别指“他们（的）”和“我们（的）”而不是什么别的。在这一组中都用式（ZC15a）。

17.5 部分与总体

部分属于总体，人事物即由它的总体来修饰；这是17.3节人事所属的特殊情况。

例组 17-4

1. Ali is a friend of mine.
2. This problem is the most difficult of the three.
3. Three of them were punished for disobeying or-

- ders.
4. Ali is the better boy of the two.
 5. I will buy two of a kind.
 6. It was another mistake of yours.
 7. That's no business of mine.
 8. I prefer this dress of my sister's.
 9. I have read two volumes of Lu xin's.
 10. Shakespeare is called the poet of poets.
 11. She went away on her wedding day of all days.
 12. We of intelligentsia are all for reform.

译文 17-4

1. 阿丽是我朋友中的一个。
2. 这问题是三个中最难的一个。
3. 他们中的三个因不服从命令而受到惩罚。
4. 阿里是那两个中比较好的孩子。
5. 我要每一种买两个。
6. 那是你的另一个错误。
7. 那是不管我的事。
8. 我喜欢我姐姐的衣服中的这一件。
9. 我已经读了鲁迅全集中的两卷。
10. 莎士比亚被称为诗人中之最。
11. 她那一天不走而偏偏在她结婚那天走啦。
12. 身居知识分子的我们全力支持改革。

从例组17-4中我们可以看出各例句中的部份与总体的各种关系都是清楚的。可以注意一下的是例句3的 *three of them* 与例组17-3中例句F1的 *the three of them* 同样是指三

个人，而表面上的差别就是定冠词 the；three of them 是以 of them 作为定词修饰语，说明是他们中的而不是我们中或你们中的三个，而“他们”显然不止三个；the three of them 是以 the 作为“三个人”的定冠词，而 of them 则作为说明修饰语，说明是“他们三个”而不是别的，而“他们”一共就只有“三个”。在这一组中用式 (ZC15a)。

17.6 行动的修饰

象汉语一样，英语中有许多名词属于行动性质，作为这种名词的修饰语，特别是介词词组，从意义上讲则成为各种行动的修饰。其中可以概括为两种：(1) 介词的宾语为行动的执行者，和 (2) 介词的宾语为行动的对象或内容。下面先看若干例句，再予以说明。

例组 17-5

1. The resignation of the Cabinet was unavoidable.
2. Keep the cake untouched till the arrival of the children.
3. The shooting of the hunter frightened all the birds away.
4. The writing of a book needs a strong will besides knowledge.
5. Writing of these letters took me four hours.
6. Search of knowledge and love of study are inseparable.
7. There has been some delay in the execution

of his will.

8. He showed perfect mastery of his craft.
9. His acting of knowing everything means only he knows nothing.
10. His shooting of a bird let the others flying away.
11. What he said was an approximation of my idea.
12. He has a strong dislike of pomposity.
13. She had no perception of the danger ahead.
14. The love of money is the root of all evils.
15. He went about in fear of his enemy.
16. Don't take any notice of what he says.
17. Don't make fun of the poor boy.
18. Let us make an end of this foolish quarrel.
19. We make use of electricity every day.
20. He always takes full advantage of the mistakes made by his rivals.

译文 17-5

1. 那内阁的辞职已不可避免了。
2. 在那孩子们到达以前要保留那蛋糕原封不动。
3. 那猎人的射击把所有鸟儿都吓跑了。
4. 一本书的写作需要, 除知识外, 有坚强的意志。
5. 书写这些信件化了我四个小时。
6. 追求知识与爱好学习是不可分割的。
7. 在他遗嘱的执行(执行他的遗嘱)上已经有些耽误。
8. 他表现出完全掌握了他的工艺。
9. 他假装样样都懂只能说明他什么也不知道。

10. 他射击一只鸟让其余的都飞跑了。
11. 他们说的很接近我的想法。
12. 他强烈地厌恶浮夸自大。
13. 她丝毫没有感到前面存在的危险。
14. 迷恋金钱是一切罪恶的根源。
15. 他因害怕他的敌人而到处乱跑。
16. 一点也不要注意他所说的什么。
17. 不要取笑那可怜的孩子。
18. 让我们停止这场愚蠢的争吵。
19. 我们每天在利用电器。
20. 他老是在充分利用他对手所犯的错误。

从例组17-5我们可以指出：

一) 例句1~3中的介词宾语都是行动的执行者，译文中都采用式(ZC15a)而不能相反。

二) 例句4和5中同样是writing of sth；但由于例句4中的writing是个名词，介词的宾语是它的内容，亦即行动的说明，因之可以按照17-4节采用式(ZC15a)；例句5中的writing是个分词，介词宾语是行动的对象，实际上writing of是动词-介词的搭配，介词宾语也是介词-动词宾语，所以of不须译出。

三) 例句6~14中各介词宾语都可以说是行动的对象或内容，两种汉译都可以，我们采用了简单明了的式(ZC15b)，实际上也按介词动词考虑。

四) 例句15~20中我们有下列形式的惯用词组：in + n + of, make + n + of, take + n + of, 这就是17.1节中所提：of与它宾语的结合在减弱而与另一方面人事物的结合在加强，而介词宾语实际上已成为这些词组的宾语，这里我们只

能按介词动词考虑。

17.7 形象化的对象

英语在这样一种结构“n of a POB”中，of与它前面的n也是密切结合而形成一词组来修饰原介词宾语POB（宾语前一般都带有冠词或定词）。汉语中也有这样的修饰语，即“n of”相当于“n般的”，如例组17-6中各例句所示。实际上，“n of”可以用一适当的形容词或修饰语来代替，如例句1可以改为“*They live in a palace house*”；例句2为“*She is an angel-like girl, but has a devilish temper*”。其余可以类推。用“n of”要比用形容词更形象化。显然，在译文中采用了式(ZC15b)。

例组 17-6

1. *They live in a palace of a house.*
2. *She is an angel of a girl, but has the devil of a temper.*
3. *That fool of her husband can do nothing but obey*
4. *They actually live in a hell of a life.*
5. *There comes a mountain of a wave.*

译文 17-6

1. 他们住在一所宫殿式的房子里。
2. 她是个天仙般的姑娘，但有恶魔般的脾气。
3. 她那笨蛋式的丈夫除了服从外无法可使。
4. 他们实际上是过着一种地狱般的生活。
5. 那边来了排山倒海的浪涛。

17.8 计量和种类

这里是另一种“n of POB”的结构，其中“n of”为惯用词组，用来说明介词宾语的计量或种类。因之汉译也用式(ZC15b)。

例组 17-7

1. She bought a pound of flour, two packages of sugar, and a dozen of eggs.
2. By putting a piece of paper into a glass of water the magician lifted a pair of spectacles out of it.
3. The two brave girls rescued a flock of sheep from the snow storm.
4. You may get a few pieces of informations from the rumors.
5. Those politicians are just a pack of liars.
6. To complete this book I need another four months of hard work.
7. She is just sixteen years of age.
8. Do you care for any more of tea?
9. This is the kind of paper we used in drawing.
10. What sort of a man is he?

译文 17-7

1. 她买了一磅面粉，两盒白糖和一打鸡蛋。

2. 把一张纸放进一杯水中那魔术师从它里面取出了一付眼镜。
3. 那两个勇敢的姑娘从暴风雪中救出了一群羊。
4. 你也许可以从谣传中得到几件情报。
5. 那些政客只不过是一批说谎的人。
6. 要完成这本书我需要再有四个月的艰苦工作。
7. 她正当二八年华。
8. 你要再来点茶吗?
9. 这是我们用来绘图的那一种的纸。
10. 他是哪一种的人?

表示数量的“n of”惯用语是很多的，它们与汉语中用的大致相同，列举日常用的如下：

a bowl of rice (soup, noodle, ...)	一碗饭(汤, 面条, ...)
a cup of tea (coffee, ...)	一杯茶(咖啡, ...)
a can (tin) of meat (fish, ...)	一听肉(鱼, ...)
a glass of milk (wine, ...)	一杯牛奶(酒, ...)
a mug of beer (milk, ...)	一大杯啤酒(牛奶, ...)
a plate of beef (vegetable, ...)	一盘牛肉(蔬菜, ...)
a spoonful of sugar (salt, ...)	一匙糖(盐, ...)
a handful of rice (warmongers, ...)	一撮大米(战争贩子, ...)
a mouthful of food (air, ...)	一口食物(空气, ...)
a bundle of flowers (grass, ...)	一束花(草, ...)

a bunch of grapes	一串葡萄
a batch of letters (visitors, ...)	一批信 (旅客, ...)
a suit of clothes	一套衣服
a pair of shoes (scissors, ...)	一双鞋, (一把剪刀)
a great deal of, a good deal of	大量的
a lot of, lots of	许多的
a number of	若干的, 许多的
a bit of	一点点的

第十八章 介词动词

18.1 目的和定义

介词与动词的搭配问题涉及的范围甚广。有专书可资参考，这里只限于讨论介词动词，常称为介词词组作为动词的补充语。本章目的希望从介词动词的搭配以窥它们搭配的全貌；更重要的是把这种搭配联系各介词的用法。

介词动词与其它介词与动词的不同之处首先在于它的形式，有下列两种：

- 1) $(vi + pp) + POB \rightarrow vtp + O$
- 2) $(vi + adv) + pp + POB \rightarrow (vi' + pp) + POB \rightarrow vtp + O$

其中：vi为不及物动词；pp为介词；POB为介词宾语；vtp为介词动词（及物）；O为宾语；adv为副词，主要是介词型副词；vi'为与上述副词结合后的动词（不及物）。形式如上，但必须符合下述条件：（一）这种句子可以转化为被动语态，或者（二）可以有代名词式问句（即如who, what等而不是如where, when等），或者两者都符合。例如：

The baby takes after her mother. 这婴儿象她的妈妈。

Who does the baby take after? 这婴儿象谁？

（把这句改为被动语态则毫无意义。）再如

We should care for the elders. 我们应该照顾老人。

Who should we care for? 我们应该照顾谁？

The elders should be cared for by us. 老人都应由我

们来照顾。

所以上两句中的take after和care for都是介词动词

我们可以对比下面一句：

I will come after supper.我要在晚饭后才来。

要把这句改变成被动语态或代名词式问句都是不行的，所以come after在这里不是介词动词。

介词与动词经过一定的搭配而成为介词动词后，它们已融合成为一个整体，其中：(1) 动词保留原意，介词按照它的用法而它的意义则寓于搭配之中；(2) 动词失去原意，介词保留原意和用法，动词的意义随介词用法而定；(3) 动词和介词均失去原意，而组合成新的意义。

下面我们以常用的，并且与介词搭配较多的几个动词所组成的介词动词来说明它们的意义，搭配关系，和介词的用法。

表 18-1

be after	追求，寻找
be up against	面对
be at	1. 从事； 2. 责备
be for	1. 为了，作为； 2. 赞成； 3. 准备； 4. 惹事生非，受罚
be down for	登记，入册
be in for	经受
be out for	物色，企求
be off	1. 取消，戒除； 2. 不再喜欢
be down on	轻视，敌视
be in on	参预

be out of	1. 脱离; 2. 没有
be on to	觉察, 知道
be up to	1. 从事; 2. 胜任
be in with	友好相处
be through with	1. 完毕; 2. 厌烦
come across	1. 交叉而过; 2. 偶遇
come up against	1. 面对; 2. 碰上
come at	1. 达到; 2. 获得, 发现; 3. 攻击
come by	1. 经过; 2. 获得
come in for	1. 参加; 2. 遭受
come into	1. 开始; 2. 继承, 得到
come of	起源于
come off	1. 掉下; 2. 废涂
come (up) on	1. 要求; 2. 突然想出; 3. 突袭
come down on	1. 申斥, 处罚; 2. 突袭
come out of	出之于
come through	经历
come to	1. 达到; 2. 回复
come round to	转变到
come up to	1. 达到; 2. 合乎, 胜任
come across with	提供
come down with	1. 病倒; 2. 付钱
come out with	发表, 说出
come up with	赶上
get across	1. 越过; 2. 使感到
get at	1. 达到, 找到, 发觉; 2. 意指;

get back at	3. 批评; 4. 受贿 报复
get into	1. 陷入; 2. 渐成习惯
get off	1. 下来; 2. 逃避
get on	1. 登上; 2. 复原
get out of	1. 脱离; 2. 避免; 3. 放弃; 4. 让开
get over	1. 越过; 2. 克服; 3. 抑制; 4. 结束
get round	1. 逃避; 2. 说服
get through	1. 通过; 2. 用完
get down to	认真对待
get round to	抽出时间
get up	登上
get away with	1. 拿走; 2. 逃避
get off with	(同上, 通用)
get on with	继续
get through with	完成, 完毕
go about/around	1. 着手; 2. 忙于
go after	追求
go against	1. 违反; 2. 不利于
go at	1. 努力对付; 2. 袭击
go by	按照
go for	1. 力求; 2. 批评。攻击; 3. 欣赏
go in for	1. 参加; 2. 爱好; 3. 致力于
go into	1. 发作; 2. 深究; 3. 进行
go off	失去兴趣

go (up) on	1. 依据; 2. 喜爱
go back on	失约, 退缩
go over	1. 重复; 2. 改进; 3. 细查, 搜寻
go through	1. 经受; 2. 完毕; 3. 履行; 4. 审查, 搜寻
go with	1. 伴同; 2. 同意; 3. 调和
go about with	结交, 求爱
go along with	1. 结伴; 2. 同意
go down with	病倒
go through with	完成
go without	没有
look after	照顾
look at	1. 看待; 2. 过目; 3. 检查; 4. 拒绝 (用于负意)
look for	1. 寻找; 2. 指望
look out for	1. 物色; 2. 留意, 提防
look into	1. 调查; 2. 浏览
look (up) on	认为
look down on	轻视
look over	1. 检查; 2. 略过
look to	1. 注意; 2. 照料; 3. 指望
look forward to	期待
look up to	敬仰
run across	偶遇
run after	1. 追踪; 2. 追求;
run up against	碰上
run into	1. 陷入; 2. 撞及; 3. 达到

run out of	失去
run over	1. 再过目; 2. 复习
run through	1. 用完; 2. 过目; 3. 重复
run to	1. 达到; 2. 趋向于; 3. 足以应付
run away with	1. 耗尽; 2. 偷走; 3. 轻易取得

18.2 有关介词动词的几点说明

我们虽然还没有涉及到介词动词的应用，但就上节六个动词 (be, come, get, go, look 和 run) 所组成的介词动词来说，我们可以指出：

1) 部分介词如：about, across, after, against, into, off, out, of, over, roundthrough, under, up, up to, without 它们的基本意义不变，在词组中起主导作用，并且其中同一介词在不同搭配有一定联系。

2) 简单介词如 at, by, for, of (up)on, to, with 由于它们本身意义相当多；搭配后的意义也不少，它们的联系也不明显；搭配后要看应用而定，下节中将分别说明。

3) 部分的动词先与副词结合后，这种副词强化了动词的作用，而这种结合 (vi') 又往往与(2)中所提的简单介词搭配，因而这种动词 vi' 起主导作用。

当然，有些介词动词中介词和动词都保留原意，另一些则搭配后别具新意。

此外，这六个动词的主要译意为“是，来，去，得，看，跑”，在汉语中也常作口头禅而相吻合。

18.3 介词动词的实例

这一节我们是以介词为主来考查介词动词。所列介词是

与动词搭配较多的有以下十五个：about, across, after, against, at, by, for, into, of, (up)on, out of, over, through, to和with. 介词词组包括表18-1中的极大部分以及上列介词与其它动词所搭配而成的。这些动词相当多，但基本上都属于日常生活上的简单活动，而动词又是经常不离口的简单词；从译意上看它们属于“听，看，讲，吃，咀嚼，敲打，挖掘，撞击，翻转，跑，跳，赶，绊，取得，保留，等等”；用它们的目的是为了使语言更生动而形象化，汉语中也正是如此。兹分为十五组叙述如下。

1) About的主要意义是关于和从事于：

例组 18-1

1. He knows how to go about these things.
2. They are going about their everyday affairs.
3. He has knocked about the world for many years.
4. He said he would see about the wiring tomorrow.
5. She set about writing the book.
6. The gang set about him and injured him badly.
7. Think about what you are doing.
8. I'm thinking about a holiday in China this year.

译文 18-1

1. 他知道怎样着手做这些事情。
2. 他们正在忙于日常事务。
3. 他在这世界上到处流浪已好多年了。
4. 他说过他明天来查看线路。

5. 她已着手写那本书。
6. 那帮人袭击了他并把他打成重伤。
7. 想想你在做的什么。
8. 我正在考虑今年去中国度假。

从例组18-1可所看出：about在这些介词动词中保留主要意义“到处和从事”由此搭配动词。

2) Across主要是“交叉而过到另一边。”

例组 18-2

1. If you come across my book, will you send it to me?
2. That wall cuts across our line of vision.
3. His decision will cut across our basic plan.
4. His conduct really get across me.
5. I ran across an old school-mate yesterday.

译文 18-2

1. 要是你偶然发现我的书，请你寄给我好吗？
2. 那堵墙挡住着我们的视线。
3. 他的决定将妨碍我们的基本计划。
4. 他的行为真叫我生气。
5. 昨天我无意中碰到一个老同学。

从例组18-2中可以看出：例句1和5都可以是失之交臂，没有失就转意为偶然相逢；例句2和3都是横过中间以致挡住和妨碍；例句4则指他的行为已过渡到别人；搭配的动词起明确各种“横过”的作用。

3) After的主要意义是“在YB以后”；在其它事物后面可以转意为“跟踪，追求，问讯，照顾，等等”类似意

义，因而也与这类动词搭配。

例组 18-3

1. He was asking after you, and I told him you're well.
2. He is after something interesting.
3. The man is going after fame and wealth.
4. The men had been hunting after that animal for weeks.
5. He was inquiring after your family.
6. She has looked after her parents for many years.
7. She runs after her children all the time.
8. He is searching after something unattainable.
9. I have send after him and hope he'll get the message.
10. The baby really takes after her mother.

译文 18-3

1. 他在问候你，我已告诉他你很好。
2. 他在追求一些有意义的事情。
3. 那人在追求名利。
4. 那几个人在追捕那野兽已有几个星期了。
5. 他在问你府上好。
6. 她照顾她的父母已有好多年了。
7. 她一刻不停地跟着她的孩子们转。
8. 他在追求无法得到的东西。
9. 我已派人去追他并且希望他能得到那口信。

10. 那婴儿确是象她的妈妈。

4) Against的主要意义是“反对, 碰撞,”它与be, come, go, run 搭配时表达一般的这种含意, 与kick, brush, rub 搭配时则表达特殊情况。

例组 18-4

1. He is up against very tough opposition in his work.
2. I brushed up against her unintentionally.
3. He has brushed against a bit of difficulty.
4. You may come up against trouble.
5. This misbehaviour will go against his chance of promotion.
6. He has been kicking against this transfer for weeks.
7. He ran up against trouble in his new job.
8. He rubs up against all sorts of people in his profession.

译文 18-4

1. 他正面对着工作中非常顽强的阻力。
2. 我无意中轻轻碰了她一下。
3. 他已碰上了一点困难。
4. 你也许会遇到一点麻烦。
5. 这一错误行为将不利于他提升的机会。
6. 他一直在反对这一调动已好几个星期了。
7. 他在他的新岗位上遇到了麻烦。

8. 他在他的行业中接触到各色各样的人。

5) At保留着它的原意“所在处所, 目标, 和从事”, 它与动词的搭配也按照这几个原意并已融合为一整体, 须从上下文判断其意所在。

例组 18-5

1. He is at this job day and night.
2. She is at him all the time about his behaviour.
3. It is difficult to come at the exact facts.
4. The man came at me with a knife.
5. I don't know what you are driving at.
6. They are having trouble getting at the information.
7. I can't get at him on the phone.
8. He went at his job with a will.
9. The man went at her with an axe.
10. He jumped at the opportunity offered him.
11. He kept at the job till finished.
12. Would you look at this paper, please?
13. We must look at the question from all sides.
14. He looks at life differently from you and me.
15. I wouldn't look at a job like that.
16. You shouldn't trush at the job like that.
17. He rushed at the work with frantic energy.
18. He'll stick at it till he succeeds.

译文 18-5

1. 他白天黑夜在干他的工作。
1. 她对他的行为一直在责备他。
3. 要知道确切的事实是困难的。
4. 那人拿了把刀子向我袭击。
5. 我不知道你意思是指的什么。
6. 他们在猎取那情报时正有些困难。
7. 我无法在电话上找到他。
8. 他以热情从事他的工作。
9. 那人拿了把斧头向她冲击。
10. 他立即接受了提供给他的机会。
11. 他坚持了工作直至完成。
12. 请你检查一下这一文件, 好吗?
13. 我们必须从各个方向来观察那问题。
14. 他看待人生与你我都不一样。
15. 我不会考虑象那样的工作。
16. 你不应该象那样急忙从事工作。
17. 他以狂热的力量赶做那工作。
18. 他要把它坚持下去直到他成功。

6) By的两个主要意义是(1)在旁边和(2)按照, 与相应的动词搭配后, 它们分别为例组18-6的例句2, 5和6以及例句1, 3和4。

例组 18-6

1. She will abide by her promise.
2. I don't know how he comes by such an idea.

3. To go by appearances, I would say all is not well.
4. That is a good rule to go by.
5. The old man had laid by a little money.
6. They stuck by their leader to the end.

译文 18-6

1. 她将信守她的诺言。
2. 我不知道他是怎样有这种想法的。(来到她旁)
3. 凭外表判断, 我可以说不尽善尽美。
4. 那是个可以遵循的好规则。
5. 那老人早已存起了一点钱。(放在一边)
6. 他们始终忠于他们的领袖。(站在一边)

7) For主要用于目的和对象, 在第十二章中有详尽的叙述。目的比较明显, 如例组18-7中的例句1~3; 对象则名目繁多, 但已知对象的性质后, 也不难搭配适当的动词, 在例组18-7中大多属于对象。

例组 18-7

1. When making up this kind of material, you should allow for shrinkage.
2. You have to answer for your son's mistake.
3. You'll be for it if they catch you.
4. He'll be in for trouble if he goes like that.
5. This book is to be left here till my son comes to call for it.
6. The present situation calls for entirely new

measures.

7. She has been caring for her mother for many years.
8. He will come in for a shock when he hears the news.
9. His words counts for nothing.
10. The police think he is covering up for someone else.
11. Don't tell me you fell for that old trick again!
12. I really feel for him in all these troubles.
13. He is always fishing for compliments and fames.
14. The man went for her with a gun.
15. He really went for that prize.
16. He has gone in for the civil examinations.
17. You're heading for trouble if you behave like that.
18. We are looking for an ambitious assistant.
19. I want you to look out for them at the party.
20. You must look out for what you are doing.
21. Forgiveness makes for good human relations.
22. We are pressing for reform.
23. He sent for a glass of milk.
24. I won't stand for this nonsense any longer.
25. She stands up for women's rights.

译文 18-7

1. 缝制这种衣料时, 你要估计到缩水。

2. 你必须为你儿子的错误负责。
3. 要是他们抓住你，你将遇到麻烦。
4. 要是他象那样下去他将遭受麻烦。
5. 这本书要留在这里直到我的儿子来取（它）。
6. 目前形势需要有崭新的措施。
7. 她在照顾她的母亲已好多年了。
8. 当他听到那消息时他将受到震惊。
9. 他的说话算不了什么。
10. 公安人员认为他正在包庇另一些人。
11. 你总不致于又落进了那老圈套罢！
12. 我确实同情他处在这一切困难之中。
13. 他老是在沽名钓誉。
14. 那人拿了枪袭击了她。
15. 他确是要去争夺那奖品。
16. 他已经参加了公务员考试。
17. 要是你的行为再那样你是在走向麻烦。
18. 我们正在寻找一个有抱负的年轻助手。
19. 我希望你在集会处留意找找他们。
20. 你一定要注意你在做的什么。
21. 宽恕有助于良好的人与人之间的关系。
22. 我们迫切需要改革。
23. 他已招呼要杯牛奶。
24. 我无法再容忍这种胡闹。
25. 他捍卫着妇女的权利。

8) Into的意义可以概括为“进入”和“成为”，与动词搭后可以有各种转意，但保留它本身意义。

例组 18-8

1. The truck banged (ran) into a wall.
2. You never know who you are going to bang into there.
3. He broke into a cold sweat.
4. The people burst into frantic applause.
5. He has come into a lot of money from his relatives.
6. The law came into force after its proclamation.
7. He cut (broke) into our conversation several times.
8. He always digs into the derivation of words.
9. I dip into this book whenever I have time.
10. The acid has begun eating into the metal part.
11. That possibility did not enter into our calculation.
12. They entered into negotiations with their opponents.
13. Don't fly into a temper with me.
14. The incident is not worth going into greater detail.
15. The police decided to inquire into the accident.
16. A policy of this type could lead into complications.
17. The police are looking into the matter.
18. He has run into trouble in his job.

19. His book has run into six editions already.
20. We shall have to see into the budget.

译文 18-8

1. 那卡车撞在一垛墙上,
2. 你绝不会知道在那里你将碰上谁。
3. 他突然出了一身冷汗。
4. 人们爆发了疯狂的掌声。
5. 他从他的亲属那里继承了许多钱。
6. 那法律公布后已立即生效。
7. 他打断我们的谈话已有好几次。
8. 他老是在钻研词的起源。
9. 我一有时间就翻阅一下这本书。
10. 那酸质已开始在腐蚀那金属部件。
11. 那一可能性并没有预计在我们考虑之中。
12. 他们已开始同他们的对手谈判。
13. 不要跟我发脾气。
14. 那小事情不值得深入调查更多细节。
15. 公安人员已决定查询那事故。
16. 这样一种政策只会导致复杂性。
17. 公安人员正在调查那事件。
18. 他已经在他的工作中碰上了麻烦。
19. 他的书已经销售到第六版。
20. 我们必须研究那预算方案。

9) Of一方面相当于out of, 即“出于”, 另一方面近似于about, 即“关于”。

例组 18-9

1. What will become of the children if their mother died?
2. The dispute comes of a trifling matter.
3. They disposed of the rubbish.
4. She just won't hear of such an idea.
5. I have too many things to think of at the moment.
6. When I think of the traffic, I prefer to stay home.

译文 18-9

1. 要是他们的母亲死了这批孩子将会怎样?
2. 那争论是由琐碎小事所引起的。
3. 他们处理掉那些破烂。
4. 她就是听不进这样的意见。
5. 我目前有太多的事情要考虑。
6. 我一想到那交通情况, 我宁可呆在家里。

10) (Up)on 的意义可以归纳为“接触在上”, 由此决定与动词的搭配。

例组 18-10

1. You should act upon the captain's order at once.
2. This medicine acts upon the heart.
3. They were definitely in on the conspiracy.
4. The country called upon us to fight the enemy.

5. We had better check on his story before we print it.
6. This is a problem for you to chew on.
7. The army is now closing in upon the enemy lines.
8. The government intends to come down heavily on tax evaders.
9. I had counted upon having it completed by June.
10. You must cut down (back) on the amount of fat you eat.
11. He was just entering upon his career in teaching.
12. It is good to have a friend to fall back upon.
13. They finally fixed on 2 p.m. as the best time.
14. The soldiers were rapidly gaining on their enemy.
15. He is getting on his feet again after failure.
16. He hit upon the solution to the problem by accident.
17. He has kept something holding out on us.
18. We look upon these people as our rivals.
19. I wish you wouldn't look down on this kind of job.
20. The thieves set upon him and beat him senseless.
21. He will seize upon any excuse not to go.
22. We must settle on the date for our next meeting.
23. Someone has told on him and the police are after him.
24. He only touched on the matter for a few

minutes.

25. You can't just walk out on us like that.

译文 18-10

1. 你应该立即执行队长的命令。
2. 这种药对心脏起作用。
3. 他们肯定参与了那阴谋。
4. 国家号召我们去与敌人战斗。
5. 在我们把它付印前我们还是核对一下他的故事。
6. 这是个给你思考的问题。
7. 那军队现在正逼近敌人的防线。
8. 政府打算从严惩罚逃税的人。
9. 我曾指望把它在六月前完成。
10. 你一定要减少你吃的脂肪含量。
11. 他刚刚在教学上开始了他的事业。
12. 有个朋友可以作为需要时的依靠是有利的。
13. 他们最后选定下午两点为最合适的时间。
14. 士兵们正在迅速地赶上他们的敌人。
15. 他失败后又重新站住了脚。
16. 他偶然想出了对那问题的解答。
17. 他已经把一些事情隐瞒着我们。
18. 我们把这些人看作是我们的对手。
19. 我希望你不要轻视这一类的工作。
20. 小偷们袭击了他并把他打得不省人事。
21. 他将抓住不去的任何借口。
22. 我们必须为我们的下次会议定一个日期。
23. 有人告发了他因而警察在跟踪他。

24. 他只提到那问题不过几分钟。

25. 你不能就那样抛弃我们。

11) Out of的意义已在第十三章中详述, 那些意义也体现在介词动词中。

例组 18-11

1. The old edition of that book has long been out of print.
2. His honesty is out of question.
3. It is out of the question to ask him for help.
4. I was all out of breath when I got to the summit.
5. To do such a thing would be quite out of his sense.
6. He has dropped out of the competition.
7. I can't get out of going to see them.
8. The car went out of control and crashed into a tree.
9. He has grown out of all his clothes.
10. I have grown out of these boyhood habits.
11. Keep out of what doesn't concern you.
12. He ran out of hope long ago.

译文 18-11

1. 那书的老版本已经绝版好久了。
2. 他的忠诚是没有问题的。
3. 想求他帮助是不可能的。(注意与上句的区别)

4. 当我到达山顶时我已完全喘不过气来了。
5. 去做那样的事可以说是完全失去了他的理智。
6. 他已退出了那竞赛。
7. 我无法抑制不去看他们。
8. 那车子失去了控制而撞在树上。
9. 他已长得所有衣服都穿不上了。
10. 我已长大成人脱离了那些孩子习气了。
11. 不要参与与你无关的事情。
12. 他早已失去了希望。

12) Over的主要意义是：“越过，遍及”，在介词动词中它基本上保留原意。

例组 18-12

1. He brushed over the details of policy.
2. He fell (tripped) over a chair and hurt his leg.
3. He seems to have got over his difficulties.
4. The police went over his room.
5. Let's go over the facts as we know them.
6. I expect this situation to hang over till next monday.
7. Let's just run over the story again.
8. Let's skip over these points and come to the main argument.

译文 18-12

1. 他轻描淡写地讲了一遍政策的各项目。
2. 他在椅子上绊了一交而伤了他的腿。

3. 他似乎已克服了他的种种困难。
4. 公安人员搜查了他的房间。
5. 让我们就事论事重复一遍。
6. 我希望把这一情况保留到下个星期一。
7. 让我们把那故事再重复一遍。
8. 让我们略过这些枝节而转到主要论点。

13) Through的意义是：“通过，遍及”，并引伸为“完毕”，在介词动词中它保留了原意。

例组 18-13

1. The soldiers broke through the enemy lines.
2. She flipped through the book and found nothing.
3. He got through the book in one evening.
4. The auditors went through the accounts.
5. The custom men went through our suitcase.
6. I couldn't live through another day like that.
7. He ran through all the money in a year.
8. I would like just to run through the important points again.
9. She skimmed through the book and laid it away.

译文 18-13

1. 士兵们突破了敌人的防线。
2. 她翻遍了那本书而没有发现什么。
3. 他一个晚上读完了那本书。
4. 会计师们审查了那帐目。
5. 海关人员检查了我们的提包。

6. 我已无法象那样般的再生活一天。
7. 他一年之内花完了所有的钱。
8. 我希望只是把各重要问题再过目一遍。
9. 她把那本书翻阅一遍后即搁在一边。

14) To的主要意义是“到，及”，由它组成的介词动词也都是这一意义，这又决定了它搭配的动词。

例组 18-14

1. The evidence all adds up to a case of murder.
2. A man answering to the police description was arrested.
3. The tax authority will soon be on to your tricks.
4. What his explanation comes to is that we can expect no further help from him.
5. He is slowly coming round to our point of view.
6. I really must get down to some study.
7. He says he'll get round to doing it next week.
8. He always keeps to his promise.
9. Would you look to the children, please?
10. I look to my parents when I need help.
11. Look to it that it doesn't happen again.
12. All her pupils really look up to her.
13. We are looking forward to seeing you again.
14. The poem runs to several hundred lines.
15. He sees to the various needs of the community.
16. Your report won't stand up to close scrutiny.
17. He is sticking to his principles in this matter.

18. She has really taken to the child.
19. He has taken to the practice of smoking.
20. He talked to the students very sharply.

译文 18-14

1. 所有证据综合起来意味着一件谋杀案。
2. 一个符合公安人员描绘的人已被拘留。
3. 税务当局会很快觉察到你的花招。
4. 他的解释可以归结为我们不能指望再从他那里得到帮助。
5. 他正在逐渐地接近我们的观点。
6. 我真的一定要认真对待学习了。
7. 他说他将在下星期腾出时间去做。
8. 他总是遵守他的诺言的。
9. 你照看一下孩子们，好吗？
10. 当我需要帮助时我指望我的父母。
11. 要注意不让它再发生。
12. 所有她的学生都真心敬仰她。
13. 我们都在盼望再看到你。
14. 那首诗一共达到几百行。
15. 他照管着公社的各种需要。
16. 你的报告经不起仔细检查。
17. 他在这件事情上坚持他的原则。
18. 她已真的喜欢那孩子了。
19. 他已开始学习抽烟。
20. 他十分严厉地训诫了学生。

15) With的主要意义“同，用，和带有”已在第十六

章中有详尽的叙述，这里只是通过介词动词的形式，特别是那种 (vi+adv) +pp介词动词，表达这种意义，因而有些意义转移在副词上。

例组 18-15

1. I don't agree with people drinking all day long.
2. He is well in with those people.
3. When will you be through with your experiments?
4. He came across with the money just when I needed it.
5. He has come (gone) down with influenza.
6. I just can't do with whining children.
7. That has got nothing to do with the problem.
8. You will just have to do with what you've got.
9. I want them to do away with this feudal custom.
10. I have decided to fall in with your plan.
11. He has got away with a huge sum in cash.
12. He got away with an apology and no other punishment.
13. This is quite enough work to be getting on with.
14. I can't go along with you in this matter.
15. He couldn't go through with the task.
16. I wouldn't put up with his nonsense if I were you.
17. The girls ran away with the prize.
18. Don't run away with the impression that I need

money.

19. He walked off with several watches.

20. Don't walk off with the idea that I like her.

译文 18-15

1. 我不赞成人们整天喝酒。
2. 他同那些人相处得很好。
3. 你什么时候可以完成你的实验。
4. 正当我需要时他碰巧带了钱来。
5. 他已因流感病倒了。
6. 我就是对付不了爱哭的孩子。
7. 那件事同这问题毫无关系。
8. 你只能就你已经所有的凑合一下。
9. 我希望他们废除这一封建陋俗。
10. 我已决定同意你的计划。
11. 他已经盗走大量现金。
12. 他以道歉了事而没有其它处罚。
13. 这是相当多而可予以继续进行的工作。
14. 在这一问题上我无法同意你。
15. 他已无法完成那任务。
16. 如果我是你, 我不会容忍他的胡闹。
17. 姑娘们轻易地夺走了奖品。
18. 不要轻易地带走我需要钱的印象。
19. 他顺手拿走了几只表。
20. 不要随便有那种我喜欢她的想法。

第十九章 介词词组作为形容词的补充语

形容词的补充语是紧接在形容词之后用来充实它的意义。介词词组是形容词补充语的一种，但有个搭配问题。下面各节限于几个搭配较多的几个重要介词。

19.1 介词 about

About的主要意义是“关于”。从例组19-1可以看出，这里的形容词都与心理活动有关，而介词宾语则为这种活动的对象，所以介词词组充实了形容词的意义，并且用“关于”来表现。

例组 19-1

1. Why should you be angry about such trifles?
2. She is happy about her promotion.
3. I felt sad about leaving my mother.
4. She is very sore about the broken vase.
5. He is crazy about skiing.
6. She is careless about her future.
7. He is indifferent about his own welfare.
8. Please be serious about your work.
9. Mother is very particular about manners.

10. They are doubtful about the weather for tomorrow.
11. How can you be positive about his innocence?
12. Are you sure about the number of his house?

译文 19-1

1. 你为什么要对这样的小事发怒?
2. 她对她的提升是感到高兴的。
3. 我对离别我的母亲是感到伤心的。
4. 她对那打破了的花瓶是非常恼火的。
5. 他对滑雪运动是着了迷的。
6. 她对她的前途是毫不在意的。
7. 他对他自己的幸福是不计较的。
8. 要认真对待你的工作。
9. 妈妈对礼貌是非常讲究的。
10. 他们对明天的气候是无法肯定的。
11. 你怎样能确定他是无罪的呢?
12. 你对他房屋的门牌能肯定吗?

19.2 介词 at

这里的形容词是作为对所见所闻在情绪上的反应, 如例组19-2中例句1~6, 以及对事物在动作上的反应, 如例组19-2中例句7~12。反过来说, 这种所见所闻以及所作所为充实了形容的意义。

例组 19-2

1. I was very glad at hearing of your success.

2. She was furious at what he had done.
3. She was terribly sad at the news.
4. Were you surprised at finding me here?
5. We stood aghast at the spectacle before us.
6. She became impatient at his frequent delay.
7. We must be good at learning.
8. The boy is very quick (slow) at arithmetic.
9. He is rather clever at making model airplane.
10. She is always dilligent at her lesson.
11. The girls have been busy at work all day.
12. The examination is close at hand.

译文 19-2

1. 我一听到你的成功非常高兴。
2. 她对他所作所为是大为生气的。
3. 她一听到那消息是非常悲伤的。
4. 你在这里遇到我是有点惊异的吗?
5. 我们对我面前的景象吓得呆若木鸡。
6. 他对他的屡次延误很不耐烦。
7. 我们必须善于学习。
8. 那孩子对算术是相当敏捷的(迟纯的)。
9. 他制作模型飞机是相当心灵手巧的。
10. 她对她的功课总是勤学的。
11. 女孩子们已整天忙于工作。
12. 那考试已近在眼前。

19.3 介词 by

与介词by搭配的形容词较少，它的主要意义在这里为“凭”和“由于”，补充事物是如何达到形容词所指的现象的。

例组 19-3

1. She is beautiful by nature.
2. He is tolerant by temperament.
3. It was one inch shorter by mistake.
4. We were late by an hour.
5. It is better by far.

译文 19-3

1. 她是天生美丽的。
2. 他是生性宽恕的。
3. 这是因误差短了一时。
4. 我们是迟了一个小时。
5. 这要好得多了。

19.4 介词 for

如第十四章小结中所述那样，for是用于为了什么，适合什么和向往什么，因之它的介词词组与这三类性质有关的形容词搭配，从而给予形容词有一定的内容，如例组19-4，19-5和19-6所示。

例组 19-4

1. I am not answerable for his misconduct.
2. Parents are liable for the faults of their children.
3. These commodities are available for export.
4. This book was intended for your boy.
5. We were apprehensive for your safety.
6. I am sorry for having hurt you.
7. I am ashamed for you.
8. Food is necessary for life.
9. This vessel is useful for holding goldfish.
10. Parents are anxious for the welfare of their children.

译文 19-4

1. 我是不会为他的错误行为负责的。
2. 父母是要对他们孩子的过失负责。
3. 这些商品都可供出口。
4. 这一本书原是打算给你的孩子的。
5. 我们为你的安全而担忧。
6. 我为了使你受伤感到不安。
7. 我为你感到害臊。
8. 食物是为生命所必需的。
9. 那容器可以用来养金鱼。
10. 父母总是渴望他们孩子的幸福。

例组 19-5

1. Exercise is good for the health.
2. Eating too much candy is bad for the teeth.
3. My pension is sufficient for my needs.
4. The question is now ripe for settlement.
5. His speech is improper for the occasion.
6. The young man is incompetent for teaching.
7. This is certainly a position appropriate for him.
8. The ground is apt for the plough.
9. With good grades he is eligible for the scholarship.
10. The wind is favourable for setting sail.

译文 19-5

1. 锻炼对健康是有益的。
2. 吃糖果太多对牙齿是有害的。
3. 我的退休金对我的需要是足够的。
4. 这问题解决的时机现已成熟。
5. 他的讲话是不适合于那场合的。
6. 那年轻人对教学是不能胜任的。
7. 这肯定是个对他适合的职位。
8. 那块土地是适合耕种的。
9. 由于优良成绩，他是有资格得到那奖学金的。
10. 那风有利于扬帆启航。

例组 19-6

1. Children are impatient for the arrival of holiday.
2. All oppressed nation are zealous for liberty.
3. He is crazy for some drinking.
4. We are anxious for his success.
5. She is ambitious for power and wealth.
6. He is greedy for fame and money.
7. The girl is sick for home.
8. The orphan child is hungry for affection.

译文 19-6

1. 孩子们急盼假日的到来。
2. 一切被压迫的民族都在积极争取自由。
3. 他极想喝点酒。
4. 我们渴望他成功。
5. 她渴望取得权力和财富。
6. 他贪图名利。
7. 那姑娘极其想着家。
8. 那孤儿渴望得到抚爱。

19.5 介词 from

与from搭配的形容词大多具有分离, 免除, 不同等含意, 这与十三章中所述相符。例句见例组19-7。

例组 19-7

1. A sound mind is inseparable from a sound body.
2. This is quite remote from my intention.
3. This word is now in a sense diverse from its original meaning.
4. He was absent from the meeting without due notice.
5. Personal effects are exempt from custom duty.
6. This style is alien from genuine English.
7. The accused is now clear from suspicion.
8. The happy old man is free from care.

译文 19-7

1. 健全的精神是与健康的身体不可分割的。
2. 这已远远不是我的意图。
3. 在一定的意义上这个单词现已与原意不一样。
4. 他没有到会而不事先通知。
5. 个人财物是免除关税的。
6. 这种格调已不同于纯粹的英语。
7. 那被告现已免除了嫌疑。
8. 那愉快的老人无忧无虑。

19.6 介词 in

从10-3节可以看到介词in的用途很广，这里它与形容词的搭配可以概括为由(1)心理和具体活动；(2)事物的有无，和(3)事物所属领域来说明形容词的含意，分别示于后

面三组例句。

例组 19-8

1. She is liberal in thought.
2. She was accurate in her judgement.
3. She is very critical in her choice.
4. She is quite firm in her resolution.
5. He has been constant in his devotion to scientific studies.
6. He is active in his service to the people.
7. He is slow in making up his mind.
8. She is extremely natural in her manners.
9. Please be specific in your answer.
10. Her attitude was implicit in the answer she gave us.

译文 19-8

1. 她在思想上是开明的。
2. 她在她的判断上是准确的。
3. 她在选择上是非常严格的。
4. 她在下决心上是相当果断的。
5. 他在科学研究的热忱上是始终如一的。
6. 他在为人民服务方面是积极的。
7. 他在作出决定时是缓慢的。
8. 她在她的风度上是极其自然的。
9. 请你在答复中要明确。
10. 她在给我们的答复中态度是含蓄的。

例组 19-9

1. Our country is abundant in natural resources.
2. The springs here are rich in mineral salts.
3. The market has been liberal in supply recently.
4. Her diet is deficient in protien.
5. He must be lacking in physical training.
6. He is fertile in imagination.
7. The boy is defitient in ambition.
8. It is sound in theory.
9. The girl is wanting in courage.
10. He is limited in his knowledge of world affairs.

译文 19-9

1. 我们国家在天然资源方面是丰富的。
2. 这里的泉水含有丰富的矿物盐。
3. 近来市场在供应上一直是充分的。
4. 她的饮食缺少蛋白质。
5. 他一定缺乏体育锻炼。
6. 他富于想象力。
7. 那孩子缺少抱负。
8. 这在理论上是正确的
9. 那姑娘缺乏勇气。
10. 他在他的世界事务知识上是有限的。

例组 19-10

1. All men are equal in the eyes of the law.

2. She is excellent in foreign languages.
3. That boy is clever in mathematics.
4. This doctor is practised in surgery.
5. He is well experienced in industrial management.
6. They are expert in many fields.
7. He is involved in many activities.
8. She is busy in keeping the house clean.
9. He is absorbed in writing his book.
10. He is always ready in helping others.

例组 19-10

1. 在法律面前人人平等。
2. 在外国语言方面他是优秀的。
3. 那孩子在数学方面是擅长的。
4. 这位医生在外科方面是有临床经验的。
5. 他在企业管理方面是富有经验的。
6. 他们在许多领域中都是熟练的。
7. 他参加了多方面的活动。
8. 她忙于保持屋子清洁。
9. 他在专心写他的书。
10. 他总是随时乐意帮助别人。

19.7 介词 of

形容词与介词of的搭配相当于这形容词的同意及物动词，因之，连同它的宾语即补充了这形容词的意义，其中包括心理活动的对象，事物丰富或缺乏的内容，等等。

例组 19-11

1. What are you afraid of?
2. There is nothing to be ashamed of.
3. I shall be glad of your company.
4. She was (im)patient of hardships.
5. I am tired of listening to such long speech.
6. The girl is fond of reading.
7. I am (un)aware of the hardships involved.
8. A man should be conscious of himself.
9. He is (in)sensible of the beauty of art.
10. He was ambitious of public renown.
11. He has been desirous of visiting China.
12. They are sure of a warm welcome.

译文 19-11

1. 你怕的是什么？
2. 没有什么可以令人惭愧的。
3. 我将乐意有你作伴。
4. 她受得（或不）了各种艰苦。
5. 我讨厌这样冗长的演说。
6. 那姑娘喜爱阅读。
7. 我（不）了解其中所包含的艰苦。
8. 一个人应该有自知之明。
9. 他（不）能领略艺术的美。
10. 他渴望得到社会上的声望。
11. 他一直想望访问的中国。

12. 他们肯定会受到热烈欢迎。

例组 19-12

1. His words were expressive of gratitude.
2. These pictures are illustrative of the text.
3. Suspicion is always indicative of a weak mind.
4. The achievements are prophatic of his future greatness.
5. Her smile is significant of acceptance.
6. His sun-tanned face is suggestive of good health.
7. She is always considerate of other's feeling.
8. It must be done irrespective of cost.
9. You should not be so reckless of expenditure.
10. Someone are very careful(-less) of public properties.

译文 19-12

1. 他的言辞表达了感激之情。
2. 这些插图说明了正文的内容。
3. 怀疑总是象征着薄弱的意志。
4. 那些成就预示着他的前程远大。
5. 她的微笑意味着认可。
6. 他的晒黑的面颊暗示了他的健康。
7. 她总是体贴别人的感情。
8. 这事必须不惜代价予以完成。
9. 你不应该这样随便花钱。
10. 有些人是非常(不)爱护公家的财物。

例组 19-13

1. This district is fertile of wheat.
2. His undertaking was fruitful(-less) of results
3. This book is full of useful examples.
4. The mountain is bare of trees.
5. He is devoid of common sense.
6. He is very sparing of words.
7. He is hopeful of attaining his object.
8. They are diffident of success.
9. She is a trifle hard of hearing.
10. He is blind of one eye.

译文 19-13

1. 这一区域盛产小麦。
2. 他的事业富有(毫无)成果。
3. 这本书充满了有用的例子。
4. 山那上没有树木。
5. 他缺乏常识。
6. 他极少说话。
7. 他有希望达到他的目的。
8. 他们缺乏成功的信心。
9. 她略微有点重听。
10. 他瞎了一只眼睛。

19.8 介词 (up)on

介词 (up)on与形容词搭配较多, 但所搭配的形容词大多与接触、支持、依靠等含义有关, 这也说明了介词(up)on

的特点。

例组 19-14

1. It is obligatory on every citizen to safeguard his country.
2. This regulation is binding on everybody.
3. The method is always contingent upon aims and details.
4. The term in prison is conditional upon his behaviour.
5. The boys are keen on table-tennis.
6. The speaker is great on international affairs.
7. We cannot remain silent on this question.
8. The job will be very tough on the new workers.

译文 19-14

1. 保卫祖国是对每个公民有责的。
2. 这一规定是对人人有约束力的。
3. 方法总是依目标和情节而决定的。
4. 监禁期限是按他的表现作为条件而决定的。
5. 孩子们对打乒乓球是爱好的。
6. 那演讲人在国际事务上是精通的。
7. 我们在这一问题上不能再保持沉默。
9. 那工作对新工人是够呛的。

19.9 介词 to

与介词to搭配的形容词都与待人接物有关, 如例组19-

15为待人，例组19-16为对事，而例组19-17则属于赞成和反对。

例组 19-15

1. A mother is dear to her child.
2. A merchant should be honest to his customers.
3. He is very generous to his subordinates.
4. The boy is always friendly to me.
5. Would this arrangement be agreeable to you?
6. You can have your breakfast whenever convenient to you.
7. Mathematics is quite distasteful to him.
8. The wound will be fatal to him.
9. One more or less is quite immaterial to me.

译文 19-15

1. 母亲对待她的孩子是疼爱的。
2. 商人对待他的顾客应当是诚实的。
3. 他待他的下属是十分宽大的。
4. 那孩子对我总是友好的。
5. 这一安排对你是合意的吗？
6. 你可以在任何对你合适的时间吃早餐。
7. 数学对他是相当乏味的。
8. 那创伤对他是致命的。
9. 多一个或者少一个对我是无关紧要的。

例组 19-16

1. We are friendly to revolution.
2. She is sympathetic to the project.
3. We should be faithful to our duties.
4. This rule is inapplicable to his case.
5. This point is impertnent to the question.
6. Why are you not more attentive to the subject.
7. No one should be deaf to advice.
8. He was too sensitive to criticism.
9. He seems to be insensible to shame.
10. He is somewhat dead to the world.

译文 19-16

1. 我们对革命是支持的。
2. 她对那计划是赞同的。
3. 我们对我们的职责应该是忠诚的。
4. 这一规则对他的情况是不适用的。
5. 这一点对那问题是无关的。
6. 你为什么不对那问题更注意点呢?
7. 没有人应该对劝告充耳不闻的。
8. 他对批评是过于敏感的。
9. 他似乎已恬不知耻。
10. 他对世事有点不闻不问。

例组 19-17

1. This scheme is contradictory to common sense.

2. The result is contrary to my expectation.
3. That will be harmful to discipline.
4. His behaviour is injurious to collective interest.
5. These habits are foreign to my way life.
6. Her health is not equal to the voyage.
7. That dress was not suitable to her figure.
8. The food is agreeable to my taste.
9. That song was offensive to the ear.
10. Germs are invisible to the naked eye.

译文 19-17

1. 这一计划是违反常识的。
2. 这一结果是违背我的预料的。
3. 这对纪律是有损害的。
4. 他的行为对集体利益是有害的。
5. 这些风俗习惯是不合我的生活方式的。
6. 她的健康是不能胜任那旅行的。
7. 那衣服是不合她的身材的。
8. 那食物是合乎我的口味的。
9. 那唱的歌是有点刺耳的。
10. 微生物是肉眼看不到的。

19.10 介词 with

按照以前所述介词with的用途和用法，with与形容词的搭配分为1)因为；2)伴同；3)使用和4)充填和有无这样四个组合如后，

1) 原因

例组 19-18

1. He was delighted with the present you sent.
2. She was pale with anxiety and suffering.
3. I felt faint with hunger and cold.
4. She was dead with fatigue.
5. She is infirm with age.
6. I was very tired with that long walk.

译文 19-18

1. 他因你们所送的礼物而感到愉快。
2. 她因忧伤和病痛而脸色苍白。
3. 我因又饿又冷而感到发晕。
4. 她累得要死。
5. 她因年老而虚弱。
6. 我因那慢长的步行而累得很。

2) 伴同

例组 19-19

1. He is close with his friends.
2. She is quarrelsome with everyone.
3. He was sympathetic with the suffers.
4. I will be open with you about it.
5. You are not entirely frank with me.
6. Your secret is quite safe with me.
7. This is perfectly accordant with her idea.
8. Your opinion is coincident with mine.

9. His words are (in)consistent with his deeds.
10. Punctuality is habitual with that man.
11. Water is incompatible with fire.
12. Lawlessness is incompatible with civilization.

译文 19-19

1. 他同他的朋友是亲密的,
2. 她同什么人都是要吵嘴的。
3. 他同情受苦受难的人。
4. 我愿对此同你坦白交谈。
5. 你并不同我完全坦白。
6. 你的秘密对我是相当保险的。
7. 这同她的意见是完全一致的。
8. 你的意见是同我的相合的。
9. 他的说话同他的行动是(不)一致的。
10. 遵守时间对那个人已习以为常。
11. 水火是不能相容的。
12. 无法无天是同文明不能共存的。

3) 使用。

例组 19-20

1. He is apt with his instruments.
2. He is good with the rifle.
3. The child is awkward with his chopsticks.
4. She is liberal with her purse.
5. Be careful with fire.
6. That girl is very clever with her hands.

7. She is free with her tongue.
8. The boy is weak with his head.

译文 19-20

1. 他善于使用他的仪表。
2. 他擅长于使用来福枪。
3. 那小孩用他的筷子还是不熟练的。
4. 她花起钱来是随心所欲的。
5. 小心火烛!
6. 那姑娘用手是十分灵巧的。
7. 她是信口开河的。
8. 那孩子不善于开动脑筋。

4) 充填

例组 19-21

1. The lake is alive with fishes.
2. The streets are aflame with lamps.
3. The new machine arrived complete with accessories.
4. The picture is instinct with life.
5. The situation is pregnant with possibilities.
6. His story was replete with falsehood.
7. The road is crowded with lookers-on.
8. The atmosphere was saturated with moisture.

译文 19-21

1. 那湖里鱼产丰富。

2. 各街道灯火通明。
3. 那新机器配齐全部附件已到达了。
4. 那图象栩栩如生。
5. 那形势孕藏着各种可能性。
6. 他的报导充满了虚伪。
7. 那路上挤满了看热闹的人。
8. 大气中的湿气已饱和了。

第二十章 句子的连接语和修饰语

(附谚语寓言)

用来作为句子连接语和句子修饰语的介词词组虽然不如它们在其它用法上多，但也不少。并且常是习惯用语。这一章就这两种功能分别列出若干典型例子。

20.1 句子连接语

句子连接语在句子中的功能可以概括为承上启下以表明句子中的地位，可以是(1)句子的序列，如例组20-1；(2)句子的转意、推论等，如例组20-2；(3)句子的结论，如例组20-3。

注

例组 20-1

1. Above all, you must be loyal to your country.
2. First of all, be sure you have the correct kind of paper.
3. There are many Latin words in present English, for example, radio.
4. For the last time, I tell you I won't go.
5. For the time being, we will have to use this tool.
6. In addition, I will tell you how to use it.
7. In the first place, we can't find enough labour

to do it.

8. She studies hard, on top of that, she does all the house work.

译文 20-1

1. 首先, 你必须忠于你的祖国。
2. 第一, 你一定要有那种合适的纸。
3. 现代英语中有不少拉丁单词, 例如, radio。
4. 最后再说一遍, 我告诉你我不会去的。
5. 就目前来说, 我们将不得利用这一工具。
6. 此外, 我要告诉你如何使用它。
7. 第一, 我们无法找到足够的工人。
8. 她努力学习, 此外, 她还做所有的家务。

例组 20-2

1. At all events, we will carry the struggle thorough to the end.
2. At any rate, the supplies will reach you within a week.
3. By all means, tell me the accident in detail.
4. By the way, have you seen him recently?
5. English has many idioms, but for that matter, so does every language.
6. In any case, we must help her all we can.
7. In any event, I'll let you know before I make a decision.
8. In any way, you must get there on time.

9. In other words, the verb 'be' is the most irregular verb.
10. You think you are right, but, on the contrary, you are wrong.
11. At first I did not like his plan, but on the second thought, it may be all right.
12. He seems slow, but, on the other hand, he is always very steady.

译文 20-2

1. 不论怎样, 我们要把斗争一直进行到底。
2. 无论如何, 那供应将于一星期内送到你处?
3. 尽你所能, 把那事故详细地告诉我。
4. 顺便问一下, 你最近看到过他吗?
5. 英语中很多习惯用语, 但就这点来说, 各种语言都是如此。
6. 总之, 我们必须尽力帮助她。
7. 不管怎样, 在我作出决定前我会让你知道的。
8. 无论如何, 你一定要准时到达那里。
9. 换句话说, 动词 'be' 是个变化最不合规则的动词。
10. 你认为你是对的, 恰恰相反, 你是错了。
11. 开始时我并不喜欢他的计划, 不过再一想, 这也许是可行的。
12. 他看上去是迟钝, 但是另一方面, 他总是十分稳健的。

例组 20-3

1. After all, he is only a child of five years.

2. As a rule, he arrives at the office at eight sharp.
3. As usual, he got to work on time.
4. In conclusion, I should like to thank all those who have worked so hard to bring about the result.
5. In that case, we will have the meeting inside the building.
6. In the case of my brother, he will graduate next year.
7. Like the rest of you, I feel bound to condemn his action.
8. Regarding our plan for future, all I can say is that we will work very hard.
9. Regardless of all difficulties, we fought it out to the end.
10. Respecting these facts, a special committee is to be appointed.

译文 20-3

1. 归根结底, 他只是个五岁的孩子。
2. 照规矩, 他在八点正到达办公室。
3. 象往常一样, 他准时开始工作。
4. 作为结束, 我应感谢那些为了得出这成就而曾经那样辛勤劳动过的所有的人。
5. 既然那样, 我们要在大楼的里面开会了。
6. 至于我的兄弟, 他将在明年毕业。

7. 象你们各位一样，我感到有必要谴责他的行动。
8. 关于我们未来的计划，我可以说的就是我们要十分努力地工作。
9. 不顾一切困难，我们已对它斗争到底。
10. 鉴于这些事实，一个专门委员会须予以设立。

20.2 句子修饰语

句子修饰语是讲话的人对所讲内容的真实程度作出客观上的叙述和主观上的评论，其中可以有：(1) 句子的一般性质，如例组20-4；(2) 句子的真实程度，如例组20-5；以及(3) 讲话人的看法，如例组20-6。

例组 20-4

1. In a way, he is not to blame for the accident.
2. In a word, we should solve this problem ourselves.
3. In all frankness, he hasn't got a chance.
4. In brief, it is about a man's adventure on a deserted island.
5. In general, hard study pays in the long run.
6. In short, we must always be prepared.
7. Once and for all, I tell you I will not do it.
8. He is, on the whole, a satisfactory student.

译文 20-4

1. 就某方面来说，他无须为那事故负责。

2. 一句话, 我们应该自己来解决那问题。
3. 坦白地说, 他没有一点机会。
4. 简单说来, 这是关于一个人在荒岛上的冒险故事。
5. 一般说来, 努力学习到头来毕竟是值得的。
6. 总而言之, 我们必须随时准备着。
7. 再说一次, 也是最后一次, 我告诉你我不会去做的。
8. 他是, 总的说来, 一个优秀的学生。

例组 20-5

1. As a matter of fact, he is a very nice boy.
2. At best, the man will finish the job tomorrow.
3. It's going to be warmer tomorrow, at least, so the weather forecast says.
4. For practical purposes, you should increase your vocabulary.
5. I think so, in fact, I am quite sure.
6. In reality, the boys are working very hard.
7. In truth, I forgot all about your request.
8. Intelligence, of course, contributes to a good personality.
9. By all accounts, he is a very kind person.
10. Luckily for him, the gun was not loaded.
11. I, for one, don't think it is a good idea.
12. Without doubt, he is the best clerk we have ever had.

译文 20-5

1. 事实上，他是个十分优秀的少年。
2. 充其量，那人将于明天完成那任务。
3. 明天将会暖和些，至少是，气象预报是这样说的。
4. 为了实用目的，你应该增加你的词汇。
5. 我想是这样，事实上，我是相当肯定的。
6. 其实，孩子们正在努力工作。
7. 老实说，我完全忘记了你要求的事情。
8. 当然，知识对优良个性起着作用。
9. 按大家所说，他是十分和善的人。
10. 对他来说算是幸运，那枪没有装上子弹。
11. 拿我来说，我不认为这是个好主意。
12. 毫无疑问，他是我们所用的最好办事员。

例组 20-6

1. For all I care, he can leave whenever he wants to.
2. For my part, I don't want to have anything to do with it.
3. For the life of me, I can't solve this puzzle.
4. Form my point of view, your plan is acceptable.
5. In my opininon, that was the right thing to do.
6. On the second thought, your theory seems possible.
7. To my disappointment, they didn't come that day.
8. To my knowledge, he is a good student.

9. To my mind, such a statement is ridiculous.
10. They arrived, to our surprise, before we did.

译文 20-6

1. 我管不着，只要他愿意他随时可以离开。
2. 就我这方面说，我不想同它有任何牵连。
3. 就是要了我的命，我也无法解出这一难题。
4. 以我的观点看，你的计划是可以接受的。
5. 照我的想法，那正是件需要做的事情。
6. 再一想，你的理论似乎是可能的。
7. 使我失望，他们那天没有来。
8. 就我所知，他是个好学生。
9. 在我心目中，这样一个声明是可笑的。
10. 令人惊奇的是，他们比我们先到。

20.3 谚语和寓言

这里我们收集了带英语介词的部分英美谚语和寓言，它们都有相应的中国谚语和寓言。这主要是指两种语言有不少相似之处。所不同的是汉译中大多没有相应的介词。这说明了我们的汉语早已经过简化，简单明瞭，而不象其它语言还受到繁琐语法的约束；其中英语还算是比较简单的，并且象在美国，一由于人民不保守，二由于四方杂处，以汉语为参考仍在不断简化。

Proverbs and Fables

1. Much ado about nothing.

2. After rain comes fair weather.
3. Lock the stable-door after the horse stolen.
4. Hope against hope.
5. It is at my finger's tip.
6. I am completely at sea(or in the dark).
7. Pride goes before a fall.
8. Look before your leap.
9. You are burning your bridge behind you.
10. He is scarcely dry behind the ears.
11. Don't judge a person by(from)appearance.
12. Disease enter by the mouth.
13. His wife is able to lead him by nose.
14. Lay by for a rainy day.
15. Time and tide wait for no man.
16. Misfortune comes from the mouth.
17. Nothing comes from nothing.
18. Skill comes from practice.
19. Your plan is merely a castle in the air.
20. There is something in the air.
21. He goes up in the air for no reason at all.
22. we felt that the election was in the bag.
23. Put every term in black and white.
24. Sitting alone she felt completely left out in the cold.
25. Discussing law with a lawyer he found himself in deep water.
26. He argued with his son till he was blue in the

face.

27. Beauty lies in lover's eyes.
28. It is a wolf in sheep's clothing.
29. He is a miser, but his heart is in the right place.
30. He has got ants in his pants.
31. such a routine job would lead him into a blind alley.
32. A fall into the pit, a gain in your wit.
33. I have wash my hand of the affair.
34. You would give him the dose of his own medicine.
35. Birds of a feather flock together.
36. Their faults were six of one and half a dozen of the other.
37. If you have anything to say, get it off your chest.
38. I asked him to sit down and take the load off his feet.
39. Her first performance has set the world on fire.
40. He hit the nail on the head.
41. I was on pins and needles all day.
42. Things always revert themselves upon reaching an extreme.
43. His name was on the tip of my tongue, but I just couldn't remember it.
44. That rumor was just made out of the air.
45. Out of debt, out of berden.

46. He gambled himself out of house and home.
47. Out of sight, out of mind.
48. Her singing is really out of this world.
49. Evil can never prevail over good.
50. A word spoken is past recalling.
51. He dragged her through the mud to share the blame.
52. Go through fire and water (or through thick and thin).
53. He is rotten to the core.
54. Add fuel to the fire.
55. The matter was settled under the counter (or the table).
56. One's action accords with one's words.
57. Kill two birds with one stone.
58. Within sight but not within reach.
59. Success is within one's grasp.
60. It goes without saying.

译文 谚语和寓言

1. 无事空忙。(庸人自扰。)
2. 雨过天晴。(苦尽甘来。)(否积泰来。)
3. 亡羊补牢, 未为晚也。
4. 抱一线希望。
5. 这在我是瞭如指掌。
6. 我完全处在雾海之中。(我茫然无知。)
7. 骄必败。(满招损。)

8. 三思而后行。
9. 你正在过河拆桥。
10. 他乳臭未干。
11. 人不可以貌相。
12. 病从口入。
13. 他的妻子能够牵着他的鼻子走。
14. 未雨绸缪。
15. 时不我待。
16. 祸从口出。
17. 无风不起浪。（事出有因。）
18. 熟能生巧。
19. 你的计划只是空中楼阁。
20. 有所风闻。
21. 他无缘无故暴跳如雷。
22. 我们感到选举已是囊中之物。
23. 把各个条文以白纸黑字定下来。
24. 独自坐着她感到完全受到冷落。
25. 同律师讨论法律他感到身处深渊。
26. 他同他的儿子争吵直到脸色铁青。
27. 情人眼里出西施。
28. 这是只披着羊皮的狼。
29. 他是个守财奴，但良心正直。
30. 他坐立不安。
31. 这样的常规办事会引他走进死胡同。
32. 吃一堑，长一智。
33. 我已洗手不干那事情。
34. 以其人之道还治其人之身。

35. 物以类聚，人以群分。
36. 他们的错误同别人是半斤八两(16两制)。
37. 要是你想说什么，就把话掏出来。
38. 我请他坐下歇歇脚。
39. 她第一次的演出轰动全球。
40. 他击中要害。
41. 我整日如坐针毡。
42. 物极必反。
43. 他的名字原在我口头，就是记不起来。
44. 那种谣言就是无中生有。
45. 无债一身轻。
46. 他赌得倾家荡产。
47. 眼不见为净。
48. 她的歌唱(此曲)祇应天上有。
49. 邪不胜正。
50. 一言既出，驷马难追。
51. 他拖她下水以分担责任。
52. 赴汤蹈火。
53. 他已腐烂透顶。
54. 火上加油。
55. 那事情是走后门解决的。
56. 言行一致。
57. 一箭双雕。(一举两得。)
58. 可望而不可及。
59. 胜利在握。
60. 不言而喻。

索 引

这索引中各介词均照英语字母排列, 后面所注数字则为各自所在章节, 以便于查找。

- aboard 4.5
- about 3.5; 5.4; 7.5; 11.5; 14.5; 14.6
- above 3.1; 7.1; 11.1
- according to 15.2
- across 5.3
- after 7.2; 12.4; 15.2
- after all 16.7
- against 4.2; 12.3
- along 5.3
- alongside 4.6
- amid 3.5; 11.3
- among 3.5; 11.3
- around 3.5; 5.3; 5.4; 7.5
- as 12.5
- as to 14.6
- at 2.1; 2.4; 4.1; 6.1; 10.1; 12.1; 13.5; 14.5
- away from 4.3
- because of 13.5
- before 7.2; 11.2; 14.1
- behind 3.2; 7.3; 11.2
- below 3.1; 7.1; 11.1
- beneath 3.1; 11.1
- beside 3.4; 11.5
- besides 16.5

between 3.4;7.4;11.3
beyond 5.1;9.1;11.4
but 16.6
but for 16.8
by 3.4;5.2;7.3;9.3;13.5;15.1;15.2;15.3
by dint of 15.3
by means of 15.3
by virtue of 13.5
by way of 15.3
concerning 14.6
despite 16.7
down 4.5
due to 13.5
during 9.3
except 16.6
except for 16.6
excepting 16.6
for 4.2;5.4;8.1;9.2;12.1;12.2;12.3;12.4;12.5;13.5
for all 16.7
from 4.3;8.3;13.1;13.2;13.4;13.5
in 2.3;2.4;6.3;10.3
in accordance with 15.2
in addition to 16.5
in case of 16.8
in front of 3.2
in lieu of 12.5
in place of 12.5

in regard of 14.6
in respect of(to) 14.6
in spite of 16.7
in view of 13.5
inside 3.3;7.4
instead of 12.5
into 4.4;8.4;14.2
like 11.5
near 4.6;8.1
next to 4.6
notwithstanding 16.7
of 4.3,8.2;13.1;13.4;13.5;17.1
off 4.3;8.2;13.1 13.3
on 2.2;2.4;4.1;6.2;10.2;12.1;13.5;14.1;14.5;14.6;
15.2;15.3
on account of 13.5
on(in) behalf of 12.5
on top of 3.1
onto 4.4
opposite 4.6
out of 4.3;8.2;13.1;13.3;13.4;13.5
outside 3.3;11.3
over 3.1;5.3;5.4;7.1;9.2;11.1;13.5;15.3;15.5;
owing to 13.5
past 5.1;9.1;11.4
pending 9.3
regarding 14.6

respecting 14.6
round 3.5;5.3;9.2
since 8.3
through 5.3;9.2;13.5;15.3;15.4
throughout 5.4;9.2
till 8.4
to 4.4;8.2;8.5;14.1;14.2;14.3;14.4
toward(s) 4.1;8.1;12.1
under 3.1;7.1;11.1;14.4;15.3;15.4;15.5
underneath 3.1
until 8.4
up 4.5
upon=on
up to 8.4;14.2;14.5
via 5.2
with 5.3;9.3;13.5;16.1;16.2;16.3
with all 16.7
with regard to 14.6
with respect to 14.6
within 3.3;7.4;11.3
without 16.4

注：还有：as for, considering和per三个介词只列入第一章介词总表1.1中，没有在以后章节中举例。

参 考 书

1. 杨崇光：“英语前置词”，商务印书馆，北京1959
2. Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G., and Svartvik, J.: "A Grammar of Contemporary English", Longman, London, 1972
3. McArthur, T. and Arkins, B.,: "Dictionary of English Phrasal Verbs and Their Idioms", Collins-Pan Pacific, 1973
4. Ho, E.: "A Guide to Prepositions", Hung Fung Book Co., Hongkong 1974
5. 林照昌：“英文介系词大全”，文友，台湾1980
6. 吴依侖：“英语介词综合手册”，河北人民出版社，1982